



**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1986**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/<br>Couverture de couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/<br>Pages de couleur   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/<br>Couverture endommagée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/<br>Pages endommagées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/<br>Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/<br>Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/<br>Le titre de couverture manque   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/<br>Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/<br>Cartes géographiques en couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/<br>Pages détachées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/<br>Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/<br>Transparence   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/<br>Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur  | <input type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/<br>Qualité inégale de l'impression   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/<br>Relié avec d'autres documents   | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/<br>Comprend du matériel supplémentaire   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion<br>along interior margin/<br>La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la<br>distorsion le long de la marge intérieure   | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/<br>Seule édition disponible   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may<br>appear within the text. Whenever possible, these<br>have been omitted from filming/<br>Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées<br>lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,<br>mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont<br>pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata<br>slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to<br>ensure the best possible image/<br>Les pages totalement ou partiellement<br>obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,<br>etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à<br>obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:/<br>Commentaires supplémentaires:  |  |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

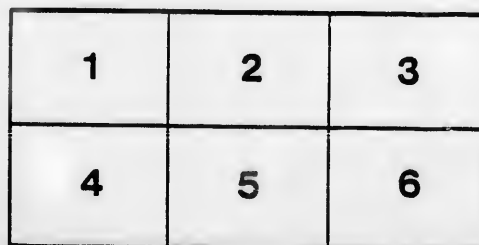
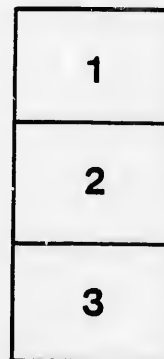
Archives of Ontario  
Toronto

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Archives of Ontario  
Toronto

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

ire  
détails  
as du  
modifier  
er une  
filmage

es

errata  
to

pelure.  
on à

32X

15

L

*Dup*  
Campbell's British-American Series of School Books.

---

HENRY'S  
FIRST LATIN BOOK.

BY THE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Late Rector of Lyndon, and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

---

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS IN BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

---



JAMES CAMPBELL AND SON,  
TORONTO AND MONTREAL.

A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF  
LATIN.

1. The accent or stress is *always* on the *penultimate* (the last syllable but one), or the *antepenultimate* (the last syllable but two).
2. If the penultimate is long, the stress is upon it; if *short*, it is on the *antepenultimate*.
3. *E* final is never *e* mute; in other words, it always constitutes a syllable with a preceding consonant (or consonants). (Thus *ma-re*.)
4. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s*, *j*) respectively before *e* (with *æ*, *œ*), and *i*.
5. *Qu*, *gu*, are pronounced respectively like *kw*, *gw* (*antiquus* = *antikvus*; *sanguis* = *sangwis*).

## P R E F A C E

TO THE SEVENTEENTH EDITION.

---

THE present edition of this deservedly popular work is the result of a careful revision of what may be called its mechanical parts. The Vocabularies, and the Latin and English Index, have been much extended by the addition of many words necessary for the learner in writing the exercises. A greater uniformity of reference has been secured. A few rules and observations have been omitted or simplified. Head lines indicating the main contents of each page have been prefixed. Every thing has been done which has suggested itself to the Editor, or has been suggested by friends who use the book in their schools, to make it more useful to the beginner.

At the same time, no pains have been spared to do this without altering in any way the character of the work, or making it inconvenient to use it side by side with copies of the last edition.



# P R E F A C E

TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THE title of this little work was suggested by Mrs. Marcet's '*Mary's Grammar.*' The object of it is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning the study of his Accidence. With this view, I have at first confined myself to the third person singular of a few tenses, and to *one* case of a noun: a plan suggested by an able writer in the Quarterly Journal of Education.

The principles of *imitation* and *frequent repetition* are acted upon, as in a larger work which I have just published; and the principal difficulties of the language (the *accusative* with the *infinitive*; the use of the *participle in dus*, &c.) are, it is hoped, fully explained, and illustrated by a sufficient number of examples.

T. K. A.

---

To the third edition I have added additional construing lessons on the principal conjunctions, and on the translation of participles.

T. K. A.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
1. On forming the accusative case . . . . .	7
2. On forming the 3rd pers. sing. of three tenses in 1st conjug.	10
3. _____ in 2nd conjug.	11
4. _____ in 3rd conjug.	12
5. _____ in 4th conjug.	13
6. _____ in the four conjugations . . . . .	14
7. Adjectives in <i>us, er</i> . . . . .	15
8. Terminations of the Genitive sing. . . . .	17
9. Genitive of <i>price</i> . . . . .	18
10. Omission of ' <i>man, thing</i> ' . . . . .	20
11. On the formation of the <i>perfect</i> . . . . .	ib.
12. Gen. with neut. adjective, &c. . . . .	21
13. Infinitive. Gen. with <i>est</i> . . . . .	23
14. Acc. Plural . . . . .	24
15. Dative and Ablative singular. <i>Time. Place</i> . . . . .	25
16. Adjectives in <i>is</i> . . . . .	26
17. On the perfect of the 3rd Conjugation. Verbs whose root ends in <i>p</i> or <i>b</i> . . . . .	27
18. Terminations of the 3rd plural . . . . .	29
19. Of the nom. and gen. plural . . . . .	30
20. On finding the nom. of third Declension . . . . .	31
21. <i>Nē</i> with imperatives . . . . .	32
22. On the perf. of Verbs whose root ends in <i>c, g, or qu</i> . . . . .	34
23. _____ <i>d</i> or <i>t</i> . Dat. and Abl. plur. . . . .	35, 36
24. Root of the perf. with lengthened (and often changed) vowel	37
25. Abl. of <i>price</i> . . . . .	39
26. On distinguishing root of perf. from root of present . . . . .	40
27. The personal pronouns. Apposition . . . . .	41
28. Nominative after <i>est</i> , &c. Some tenses of <i>esse</i> . . . . .	43
29. The compounds of <i>esse</i> . . . . .	44
30. Tenses of the <i>subjunctive</i> . . . . .	46
31. English infinitive expressing a <i>purpose</i> . . . . .	47
32. <i>That</i> expressing a <i>consequence</i> after <i>such, so, &amp;c.</i> <i>Summus</i> <i>mons, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	48
33. Some tenses of <i>posse</i> . Interrogative Particles . . . . .	50
34. Root of <i>supine</i> . . . . .	52
35. The Participles . . . . .	54

LESSON	PAGE
36. Translation of the participle of the perf. active. The ablative absolute . . . . .	55
37. The Gerunds. <i>Occidēre</i> declined . . . . .	57
38. The participle in <i>dus</i> . <i>Epistōla scribenda</i> . . . . .	59
39. Translation of 'is to be cultivated,' &c. Agent after the partic. in <i>dus</i> . . . . .	61
40. Verbs that govern the dative . . . . .	62
41. Terminations of the <i>persons</i> . . . . .	64
42. The pronoun 'is.' Conditional Sentences . . . . .	65
43. <i>Scribendum est mihi</i> . . . . .	67
44. Subj. pres. and imperf. of <i>esse</i> . . . . .	68
45. <i>Credendum est Caio</i> . . . . .	69
46. <i>Colenda est virtus</i> . . . . .	71
47. The Infinitive Mood . . . . .	73
48. Passive Forms . . . . .	75
49. <i>Qui, quæ, quod. Mihi creditur, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	76
50. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	78
51. The Comparative and Superlative . . . . .	80
52. Prepositions . . . . .	82
53. Translation of 'may,' 'might' . . . . .	83
54. Translation of 'ought' . . . . .	85
55. Ablative denoting the measure of excess or defect. <i>Quo—eo; quanto—tanto</i> . . . . .	87
56. <i>Quo</i> . . . . .	88
57. <i>Pœnitet, pudet, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	89

## (ADDITIONAL CONSTRUING LESSONS.)

58. <i>Et—et; quum—tum, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	91
59. <i>Aut; vel; sive (seu), &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	92
60. <i>At, sed, tamen, &amp;c.</i> (adversatives) . . . . .	93
61. <i>Nam, igitur, &amp;c.</i> (causals) . . . . .	ib.
62. <i>Ut</i> . . . . .	94
63. <i>Nē</i> . . . . .	95
64. <i>Quin</i> . . . . .	96
65. <i>Quominus</i> . . . . .	97
66. <i>Vereor ne: vereor ut</i> . . . . .	98
67. Interrogatives . . . . .	99
68. _____ in dependent sentences . . . . .	100
69. Double questions . . . . .	ib.
70. Conjunctions that always take subj. . . . .	101
71—78. On construing participles by accessory sentences . . . . .	102—108
Sketch of the Accidence: with <i>Tables, Vocabularies, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	109
Genders . . . . .	124
Questions . . . . .	129
Table of Differences of Idioms . . . . .	133
Index I. English . . . . .	135
— II. Latin . . . . .	143
Hints for finding root of <i>present</i> from root of <i>perfect</i> }	

PAGE	
abla-	55
. . .	57
. . .	59
r the	61
. . .	62
. . .	64
. . .	65
. . .	67
. . .	68
. . .	69
. . .	71
. . .	73
. . .	75
. . .	76
. . .	78
. . .	80
. . .	82
. . .	83
. . .	85
eo ;	87
. . .	88
. . .	89
. . .	91
. . .	92
. . .	93
. . .	ib.
. . .	94
. . .	95
. . .	96
. . .	97
. . .	98
. . .	99
. . .	100
. . .	ib.
. . .	101
102—108	
. . .	109
. . .	124
. . .	129
. . .	133
. . .	135
} 143	
fect }	

# HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK.

Words printed in *Italic letters*, (thus, *mensa*,) in an exercise, are phrases that are not to be translated word for word; or about which something has been taught that should be remembered. Numerals *in the line* refer to the sections of the book; *above the line*, and followed by a curve, to the table of questions, pp. 129—132; above the line, but without a curve, to the table of differences, pp. 133, 134. In some few instances the page is referred to, in which case the letter *p.* is placed before the numeral.

## Lesson 1.

### *Cases in Latin and English.*

1. WHERE in English we put a preposition before a noun, the Romans often used *no preposition*, but changed the *end* of the word.

2. Thus, '*mens-a*' being '*a table*;' '*mens-æ*' is '*of a table*;' '*mens-â*,' '*BY a table*,' and so on.

3. A word so altered is called a *case* of that word; thus *mensæ* is called the *genitive case* of *mensa*; and so on.

4. The unaltered word is said to be in the *nominative case*, though it is not strictly a case.

5. All Latin nouns do not form their cases exactly in the same way.

As there are five principal ways of forming the cases of a noun, nouns are divided into *five* classes, each class being called a *declension*.

6. (a) Nouns that end in *a* in the *nominative*, and make their *genitive* in *æ*, are of the *first* declension.

(b) Nouns that end in *us*, *er*, *um*, and make their *genitives* in *i*, are of the *second* declension.

(c) Nouns in *us*, that make their *genitive* in *ûs*,

- and all nouns in *u*, are of the *fourth* declension.
- (d) Nouns that end in *es*, and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth* declension.
- (e) Nouns with any ending not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those with an ending belonging to some other declension, but with a *genitive* in '*is*,' belong to the *third* declension<sup>a</sup>.

### 7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.


The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive* verbs, and many *prepositions*.

8. A *transitive* verb is one that gives no *complete* meaning till some person or thing is mentioned to *whom* or *which* the action was done.

He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

1.	2. 4.	3. 5.
am	um	em.

But  If a noun is *neuter*, its *accusative* is the same as the *nominative*<sup>b</sup>.

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*, when the endings of the *nominative*, as set down in

<sup>a</sup> TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS.

Nouns that end in	Genitive		
a	æ	are of the first	} Declension.
us, er, um	i	. . second	
us, u	ûs	. . . fourth	
es	ei	. . . fifth	
Those with <i>any other</i> ending, or with <i>these</i> if their gen. end in ' <i>is</i> '	is	. . . third	

<sup>b</sup> In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*.

the table (in p. 8, note *a*), have been thrown away. But to this there are two exceptions:—

- (1) The *case-endings* (or '*terminations*') of nouns of the second declension in *er*, are added on thus: *e* is *dropt*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. *agr-um*. (Sometimes however the *e* is kept; as *puer*, Acc. *puer-um*.)
- (2) The *terminations* of the *third* declension are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the *nominative* being *lapis*, Gen. *lapid-is*.
- (3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be *got* from the *genitive* by throwing away '*is*.'

Exercise 1.

[Obs. *m.*, *f.*, *n.* stand for *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.  
*G.* stands for *genitive*.]

11. Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

VOCABULARY 1.

Crown, garland,	corōna	KEY-WORDS <sup>c</sup> .
Island,	insūla	( <i>coronation</i> ).
Friend,	amicus, <i>G.</i> amiei	( <i>insular</i> ).
Umpire,	arbiter, <i>G.</i> arbitr-i	( <i>amicable</i> ).
Leaf,	folium, <i>G.</i> folii	( <i>arbitration</i> ).
Garden,	hortus, <i>G.</i> horti	( <i>foliage</i> ).
Law,	lex, <i>G.</i> lēgis	( <i>horticulture</i> ).
Chariot,	currus, <i>G.</i> currūs	( <i>legal</i> ).
Face,	facies, <i>G.</i> faciēi.	( <i>curricule</i> ).
Dust,	pulvis, <i>G.</i> pulvēr-is	( <i>pulverize</i> ).
Time,	tempus, <i>G.</i> tempōr-is, <i>neut.</i>	( <i>temporal</i> ).
Oak,	quercus, <i>G.</i> quercūs.	
Horn,	cornu, <i>neut.</i>	( <i>cornucopia</i> ).

<sup>c</sup> That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a *key* to their meaning.

## Lesson 2.

12. The *persons* of the Latin verb are distinguished by their *endings* (as think-*est* and think-*s* are in English). But in Latin *all* the persons have different endings; and the pronoun *I, thou, &c.* is generally *left out*, because the *ending* of the verb shows the person meant.

(Verbs whose *infinitives* end in *ārĕ*, as *ām-ārĕ*.)

13. By throwing off *ārĕ* you get the root.

14. By adding *at* to the root you get the third person singular of the *present* tense: by adding *abat*, the third person singular of the *imperfect* tense: by adding *abit*, the third person singular of the *future* tense.

(a) Am-ārĕ, to love: root *am.* | am-ābāt, was loving.  
am-āt, loves; is loving; or | am-ābit, will love.  
does love.

Where in English we use an auxiliary verb, "*will love,*" "*may love,*" &c., the Romans used endings to the root, as *am-abo, I will love.*

## 15. VOCABULARY 2.

		KEY-WORDS.
To administer,	administr-are	(administration).
To praise,	laud-are	(laudatory).
To swear,	jūr-are	(ad-jure).
To plough,	ār-are	(arable).
To dance,	salt-are	(saltatory).
To avoid,	vit-are	(in-e-vitable).
To build,	œdific-are	(edification *).
Government,	imperium, G. imperii	(imperious).
Husbandman,	agricōla	(agriculture).
Wall,	mūr-us, i	(a mural crown †).
Death,	mors, G. mort-is	(mortal).
Boy,	puer, G. puĕri (keeps e)—	(puerile).
Way; road,	via	(de-vious).
To show, or point out,	monstr-are	(de-monstrate).
Dragon,	draco, G. dracōn-is.	
Voice,	vox, G. vōc-is	(vocal).
Fox;	vulpes, G. vulp-is.	
Not,	non (before the verb).	
Girl,	puella, G. puellæ.	

\* This word means 'the building a man up' in religious knowledge and practice: *building on the foundation of faith.*

† A crown given to the soldier who first mounted the *walls* of a besieged city.

Model sentence. (The accusative is placed before the verb.)

16. Servius imperium administrat.  
*Servius* (the) *government* *administers.*

17. ☞ The Latin language has no *article*, that is, no separate word for *a* or *the*.

Exercise 2.

18. [Order: Nom. Acc. Verb.]

Balbus<sup>d</sup> is-building a wall. The boy shows the road. Caius will-build a wall. The boy will-show the road. The husbandman will-plough. Caius was-ploughing. Caius will-praise the boy. The boy will-avoid death. He was-swearing. The boy dances. The boy will-dance. The girl was-dancing. The boy will-avoid the fox. The fox was-avoiding the boy.

☞ When there is a 'not,' the present with 'does' must be used: and the auxiliary verb (*does, will, shall, &c.*) must stand before the 'not,' e. g. 'does not.'

Puer murum ædificābat. Caius puellam laudat. Balbus jurābit. Agricōla arat. Balbus puerum vitābat. Puer mortem vitābit. Puerum non laudat. laudat, saltabat, laudabat; jurat, ædificabit, vitat, saltabat, vitabit, vitabat; laudabit, saltat, jurat, jurat, monstrabat, arabit; monstrat, ædificat, vitabit.

Lesson 3.

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ēre.)

19. VOCABULARY 3.

To fear,	tīm-ēre	KEY-WORDS.
To see,	vīd-ēre	(timid).
To laugh,	rīd-ēre	(pro-vidē).
To laugh-at, }		(de-ride).
To hold,	tēn-ēre	(a ten-ant).
To frighten,	terr-ēre	(terri-fy).
To teach,	dōc-ēre	(doc-tor).

A Christian, Christian-us, G. i.

<sup>d</sup> *Balbus* and *Caius* are the Latin names. Gen. *Balbi, Caii.*



20. The root is got by throwing off *ĕre*.

21. The endings of the third persons singular are,  
 (*pres.*)            (*imperf.*)            (*fut.*)  
 et,                    ĕbat,                    ĕbit.

*Exercise 3.*

22. A Christian does not fear death. The boy will fear the dragon. The voice will frighten the boy. The boy was holding the fox. The boy will hold the dragon. Balbus was laughing-at the boy. He was building a wall. Caius will plough. He swears. A Christian will not fear death. Balbus was showing the way.

timet, ridĕbit, terrĕbat; tenet, videt, vidĕbit.

ridĕbat, tenĕbat, timet; timĕbit, terret, timĕbat.

Puer vulpem non timet. Draco puerum terrĕbit.  
 Balbus dracōnem tenĕbat. Puella viam monstrābat.  
 Puer puellam ridet. Caius puerum docĕbat.

*Lesson 4.*

(*Verbs whose infinitive ends in ĕrĕ.*)

23. VOCABULARY 4.

To neglect, disregard,	neglig-ĕre	KEY-WORDS ( <i>negligent</i> ).
To shut,	claud-ĕre	( <i>include</i> ).
To write,	scrib-ĕre	( <i>de-scribe</i> ).
To slay,	occid-ĕre.	
To learn,	disc-ĕre	( <i>disciple</i> ).
To lead,	dūc-ĕre	( <i>ad-duce</i> ).
Gate,	porta	( <i>porter</i> ).
Letter,	epistōla	( <i>epistle</i> ).
Slave,	servus	( <i>servile</i> ).
Master,	dominus	( <i>domineer</i> ).

24. The root is got by throwing off *ĕre*, and the terminations of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)            (*imperf.*)            (*fut.*)  
 it,                    ĕbat,                    et.

*Exercise 4.*

25. The slave will shut the gate. The girl was writing a letter. Balbus disregards the voice. The

boy will learn. Caius was learning. The girl will show the garden. The master will praise (his) slave. The slave was showing the way. The slave will not fear death. The slave will plough.

discit, claudit, claudēbat; negliget, scribit, scribet, claudet, discēbat, scribet; occidit, discet, ducit.

Servus dominum occidit. Puer discēbat. Servus portam claudēbat. Epistolam scribet. Jurabit. Puella puerum laudābat. Puella mortem vitābit. Puer vulpem non timēbit. Christianus mortem non timet.

## Lesson 5.

(Verbs whose infinitives end in īrē.)

## 26. VOCABULARY 5.

To hear,	aud-īre	(audi-ble).
To feel,	} sent īre	(senti-ment).
To perceive,		
To open,	} apēr-īre	(aperture).
To uncover,		
To bind,	vine-īre.	
Pain,	} dolor, G. dolōr-is, masc.	(dolor-ous).
Sorrow,		
Head,		

27. The root is got by throwing away *ire*, and the endings of the third persons singular are,

(pres.)	(imperf.)	(fut.)
it,	iēbat,	iet.

## Exercise 5.

28. The boy hears a voice. Balbus will feel pain. The slave uncovers his head. The girl will open the letter. Balbus will bind (his\*) head. Caius will hear the voice. Caius was uncovering (his) head. Balbus will write the letter. The master neglects (his) slave. vinciebat, sentiet, audiet; sentit, audiebat, aperit, audit, aperiebat, sentiet; vincit, audit, sentiebat.

Puer caput vinciebat. Balbus vocem audiet. Caius dolōrem vitābit. Puella dolōrem sentiēbat. Servus

\* Not to be translated.

epistolam scribēbat. Caius servum laudābat. Servus murum ædificat. Servus currum monstrābit.

Lesson 6.

29. The forms we have now gone through are the four classes (or *conjugations* as they are called) of verbs. They are distinguished by the endings of the infinitive mood.

30. (a) Verbs whose infinitives end in *āre*, are of the *first* conjugation, and their favourite vowel is *long a*.  
 (b) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ēre*, are of the *second* conjugation, and their favourite vowel is *long e*.  
 (c) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ĕre*, are of the *third* conjugation, and their favourite vowels are *short e* and *short i*.  
 (d) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *īre*, are of the *fourth* conjugation, and their favourite vowel is *long i*.

31. Terminations of the Infinitive.

1 conjug.	2 conjug.	3 conjug.	4 conjug.
<i>(favourite vowel ā)</i>	<i>(fav. vowel ē)</i>	<i>(fav. vowels ĕ, ĭ)</i>	<i>(fav. vowel ĭ)</i>
Infn. :—āre	ēre	ĕre	īre

32. Third persons of three tenses.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
<i>Present,</i>	āt	ēt	it	īt
<i>Imperf.,</i>	ābāt	ēbāt	ēbāt	ībāt
<i>Future,</i>	ābit	ēbit	ēt	iēt

33. VOCABULARY 6.

To fight,	pugn-āre	<i>(pugn-acious).</i>
To sing,	cant-āre	<i>(cant-icle).</i>
To play,	lūd-ĕre	<i>(de-lude).</i>
To cry out,	clām-āre	<i>(clam-our).</i>
To answer,	respond-ĕre	<i>(respond).</i>
To sin,	pecc-āre	<i>(pecc-ant).</i>
To run,	curr-ĕre	<i>(curr-icle).</i>
To hope for,	spēr-āre	<i>(de-sper-ate).</i>
Father,	pāt-er, G. patr-is	<i>(paternal).</i>

Exercise 6.

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husband-man was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.


Servus mortem sperābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnābat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors Christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

Lesson 7.

(Adjectives in us, er.)

35. VOCABULARY 7.

To finish,	fin-ire.	
Labour,	labor, <i>G.</i> labōr-is, <i>m.</i>	
Mother,	māter, <i>G.</i> matr-is	(maternal).
Woman,	mulier, <i>G.</i> mulier-is.	
Maid,	ancilla	(ancillary).
To bury,	sepel-ire	(sepulture).
Dead.	mortuus, mortua, mortuum.	(mortuary chapel).
Son,	filius, <i>G.</i> filii.	(filial).
Snake,	anguis, anguis, <i>m.</i> (pronounced angwis).	(repertory).
To find,	repēr-ire	(pecuniary).
Money,	} pecunia	
Sum-of-money,		
Master,	} magister, <i>G.</i> magistr-i, a master who teaches	} (magisterial).
To rouse-up, or awaken,	} excit-āre	(excitement).
Mine,		
Good,	bonus, bona, bonum.	
His, her, its, theirs, suus, sua, suum; used when the person whose the thing is, is the nominative to the verb.		

36.  Adjectives in us, er, have a masculine, a

*feminine*, and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i*. (Decl. ii.)  
 — feminine ——— *a*; G. *æ*. (Decl. i.)  
 — neuter ——— *um*; G. *i*. (Decl. ii.)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus* (whose *fem.* is *bona*; *neut.* *bonum*), if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*<sup>f</sup>; and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken<sup>g</sup>.

38. Mulier ancillam suam excitat.  
*The woman maid her awakens.*

Obs. Except with these little words, *meus*, *suus*, &c. the adjective generally stands before its substantive. ‘*Bonus puer*,’ a good boy.

[*Ancillam suam*:—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

<sup>f</sup> See 9, note b.

<sup>g</sup> TABLE by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined. For exceptions, see pp. 124, 125, 126.

I. DECL. all <i>feminine</i> , except POETA (poet), and other designations of men.		
II. DECL.	{ <i>us</i> , or, <i>masculine</i> : except, <i>humus</i> , <i>domus</i> ( <i>fem.</i> ), and a few more.	
	{ <i>um</i> , <i>neuter</i> .	
IV. DECL.	{ <i>us</i> , <i>masculine</i> , except <i>manus</i> ( <i>fem.</i> ), and a few more.	
	{ <i>u</i> , <i>neuter</i> .	
V. DECL.	{ <i>es</i> , <i>fem.</i> (DIES masculine, but sometimes <i>fem.</i> in singular.)	
III. DECL. Mase. term.	Fem. term.	Neut. term.
ER, OR, OS,	do, go, io,	<i>c, a, t, e, l, n,</i>
ES <i>increasing,</i>	as, is, aus,	<i>ar, ur, us.</i>
that is, having	x,	(But <i>ūs</i> with
in the genitive	es <i>not increasing,</i>	<i>long u</i> , in words
<i>asyllable more</i>	s <i>after a consonant.</i>	of more than
than in the no-		one syll. is <i>fem.</i> )
minative.		
o, when not <i>do,</i>		
<i>go, io.</i>		

Exercise 7.

39. The father buries (his \*) dead son. The husbandman finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labour. The girl was finishing her labour. The master will show his garden. The father will praise (his) good son.

Pater filium suum docēbat. Agricōla anguem non timēbit. Caius legem negliget. Christiānus pecuniam negligit. Mortuum agricōlam sepeliet. Pater meus vocem meam non negliget.

Lesson 8.

40. The following are the genitive terminations of the five declensions:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
æ	i	is	ūs	ei.

- ☞ (1) In the Genitive of the fourth *ūs* is for *u-is*.  
 (2) In the Genitive of the fifth, the *e* is long when it follows a vowel; short when it does not. (Faciēi, fidēi.)

41. VOCABULARY 8.

Through,	per, governs accusative.	
To walk,	ambulare	(per-ambulate).
To call,	vocare	(vocate).
Poet,	poēta, m.	
To overturn,	{ evertēre (the first is the literal meaning: the se- cond the word <i>vē</i> should use in English).	
To pull-down,		
House,	dom-us, ūs, f.	(domestic).
Body,	corpūs, corpōr-is, n.	(corporal punishment).
Daughter,	filī-a, æ, f.	(filial).
Great,	magnus	(magnitude).
Little, }	parvus.	
Small, }		
City, town,	urb-is, f.	(urbane).
He himself,	ips-e, a, um.	
Queen,	regina.	
King,	rex, Œ. rēg-is	(regal).

\* Words in parenthesis ( ) are not to be translated.

Sceptre,	sceptrum.	
To tear-to-pieces,	dilaniāre.	
An ass,	asinus, <i>G.</i> asīni	( <i>asinine</i> ).
To avenge,	vindicāre	( <i>vindicative</i> ).
Lion,	leo, <i>G.</i> leōnis.	

41\*. Ipse Sulla domum evertit.

*He-himself Sulla's house pulls-down.*

Obs. ~~35~~ The governed genitive stands first, unless the governing noun is emphatic. When the governing noun is to stand before *its genitive*, it will have an accent after it ('Thus; festival').

### Exercise 8.

42. The slave shuts the gate of the city. He-himself will not pull down his friend's house. The father will not disregard the voice of his son. The father is burying the body of (his) dead son. The boy was pointing-out the snake's body. My mother was praising the poet's daughter. The good boy was walking through the city. My father will call the husbandman's daughter. The poet was holding the queen's crown.

Filius patris sui mortem vindicābit. Pater filii sui vocem non negliget. Leo asinum dilaniat. Servus domini sui mortem vindicābat. Regis sceptrum vidēbit. Agricola per urbem ambulabit.

### Lesson 9.

Say the termination of the tenses (32). Give the accusative endings (9). Give the genitive endings (40).

#### 43. VOCABULARY 9.

At nothing,	{ nihili (the genitive of <i>nihilum</i> , which is only used in some particular phrases).	
To value,	astimāre	( <i>estimation</i> ).
At a great (price),	} magni †.	
At a high (price),		
At a little (price),	} parvi †.	
At a low (price),		
To think little of,	parvi astimāre.	
Labour,	lābor, <i>G.</i> labō-is.	
Wise,	sapiens, sapientis	( <i>sapient</i> ).
True, real,	vērus, vera, verum	( <i>verily</i> ).
Virtue,	virtūs, <i>G.</i> virtūt-is, <i>f.</i>	

† These are genitives, *price* being understood.

44. With some words the *price* or *value* is put in the *genitive*.

Sapiens virtūtem magni aestimat.  
*The wise man virtue at a great (price) values.*

45. Magna regis corona, *the king's great crown.*  
 Magna boni regis corona, *the good king's great crown.*

Imitate this order; *adj.—gen.—subst.*

Exercise 9.

46. He disregards his slave's great labour. He sees a great snake. The boy was avoiding the snake's great body. He is avoiding the great snake's great body. The master was rousing up his slave. He will feel great sorrow. The poet will feel real sorrow. The father will not neglect the sorrow of his son. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*. The master *thinks little of* the labour of his slave. The father will value my labour *at a great (price)*.

Caius amici sui labōrem parvi aestimat. Pater labōrem meum magni aestimat. Leo asini corpus dilaniabat. Mater laudabat filiam. Vulpes leonem timet. Boni pueri caput aperiebat. Dominus servi sui epistolam aperiet. Magnam urbis portam claudabat. Servus puerum vocabit.

Lesson 10.

47. VOCABULARY 10.

Very great, greatest,  
 At a very great (price),  
 At a very high (price),  
 At a very low (price),  
 Avarice,  
 Unlearned,  
 Avaricious; greedy,  
 Wisdom,  
 Impious,  
 Money, sum of money,

maximus.  
 } maximi.  
 minimi.  
 avaritia.  
 indoctus.  
 avarus.  
 sapientia.  
 impius.  
 pecunia

(pecuniary).

e).  
 .  
 the governing  
 un is to stand  
 after it (Thus;

city. He-  
 ouse. The  
 son. The  
 son. The  
 My mother  
 od boy was  
 ill call the  
 olding the

ter filii sui  
 t. Servus  
 sceptrum

ve the accusa-  
 (40).

ich is  
 rases).  
 (estimation).

(sapient).  
 (verily).

nd.



48. Avārus maxīmi  
*The avaricious* (man) at a very great (price)  
 aestīmat pecuniam.  
*values money.*

When the noun meant is *man*, *woman*, or *thing*, it is often left out in Latin. If *man* is meant, the adjective must, of course, be *masculine*; if *woman*, *feminine*; if *thing*, *neuter*.

### Exercise 10.

(Ask questions from 1—4, p. 129.)

49. The avaricious (man) values virtue at-a-low-price (thinks little of virtue)<sup>3</sup>. He was pulling down the avaricious (man's) house. He will avenge the death of the wise (man). The wise (man) values virtue at-a-very-great (price). The impious (man) will fear death. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. The poet will build a great house. The poet's daughter was walking through the great city. The unlearned (man) laughs-at the poet. The true poet will laugh-at the unlearned (man).

Christiānus pecuniam parvi aestimābit<sup>3</sup>. Impii domum evertet. Indoctus sapientiam parvi aestimat. Caius sapientiam laudābit. Amīci laudat sapientiam. Christiānus avaritiam vitābit. Mater bonam filiam laudabat. Magnam regis corōnam videbit. Leo dilaniabit asinum. Puer magnam quercum monstrabit. Servus domīni sui hortum monstrabat.

### Lesson 11.

*On the formation of the Perfect.*

50. The perfect has the same ending in all the conjugations; but this one ending is added on to a

partic  
that o  
51.  
the ro  
āv, ū,  
Th  
(Re  
(Re  
52.

53.  
ēre, d

54.  
have  
the a  
prais  
The r  
not f  
price

Ju  
puer  
rat.  
vērat  
Vera

55

B  
S

i B  
chang

maxīmi  
y great (price)

, or thing, it  
s meant, the  
e; if woman,

ue at-a-low-  
pulling down  
avege the  
man) values  
pious (man)  
will build a  
great house.  
h the great  
e poet. The  
an).

it<sup>3</sup>. Impii  
parvi aestimat.  
sapientiam.  
onam filiam  
debit. Leo  
nam monstra-  
at.

in all the  
ded on to a

particular root<sup>1</sup>, that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv*, *ū*, and *iv*, respectively, to the root of the present.

Thus from	am-āre	mon-ēre	aud-īre
(Root of present)	am-	mon-	aud-
(Root of perfect)	amāv-	monū-	audīv-

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

<i>Perfect</i> ,	it,	} to be added to the root of the perfect.
<i>Pluperfect</i> ,	ērat,	
<i>Future perfect</i> ,	ērit,	

53. Find the roots of the perfect for cant-āre, terr-ēre, doc-ēre, sepel-īre.

Exercise 11.

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The Christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price (minimi).

Juravērat. Agricōla aravērit. Vulpes terruērit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavērat. Servus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepelivērat. Magnam poētæ sapientiam parvi aestimavit. Veram virtutem magni aestimavērat.

Lesson 12.

55. VOCABULARY 11.

Bad,	mālus. Evil, malum (neut. adj. used as subst.).
Something,	aliquid (n.).

<sup>1</sup> By a root is here meant that part of a word which is found unchanged in all the cases or tenses spoken of.

How much,	quantus, quanta, quantum	(quantity).
Pleasure,	voluptas, G. voluptātis	(voluptuary).
Lose,	amittere.	
Unwilling,	invitus (to be translated, 'unwillingly').	
Figure,	figūra.	
To have,	habere.	(habit).
Stability,	stabilitas.	
To condemn,	damnare	(damnation).
Unlearned,	indoctus.	
Industry,	industria.	

56. Figūra nihil habet stabilitatis.  
*The figure nothing has of stability (has no stability).*

*Aliquid temporis* { something of time. (Lat.)  
 { (some time.) (Eng.)  
*Multum boni*<sup>k</sup> { much of good. (Lat.)  
 { (much good.) (Eng.)  
*Quantum voluptatis*<sup>l</sup> { how much of pleasure. (Lat.)  
 { (how much pleasure.) (Eng.)

57. (Eng.) He does it unwillingly.  
 (Lat.) He unwilling does it.

### Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the root of perfect from hab-ere, vit-are, dilani-are, laud-are.

58. The boy will lose *some time*. *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose! The figure had (*perf.*) *no stability*. He avoided *much evil*. The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly<sup>2</sup>.

Servus viam monstr-av-erat. Puer mortem tim-u-it. Dominus servum suum excit-av-erat. Aliquid temporis invitus amittet. Christiānus avaritiam damnat. Quan-

<sup>k</sup> ~~55~~ Boni, mali, &c. (the genitives of bonum, malum) are here used as substantives.

<sup>l</sup> ~~56~~ Neuter adjectives are often followed by a genitive case.

These adjectives are generally such as relate to quantity; indefinite numerals, &c.

tum habet voluptātis sapientia! Avaritia nihil habet  
veræ voluptātis. Quantum voluptātis hab-u-erit!

## Lesson 13. [Questions 1—6.]

## 59. VOCABULARY 12.

To err,	errare.	
Natural-to-man,	humānus	(human).
Nobody,	nēmo, G. nemin-is.	
To offend-against; to wrong,	} violāre	(violate).
To break (a law, one's word, &c.)		
Fidelity; faith; one's word, honour, &c.,	} fides, fidēi.	
To keep; to observe,		
(One's) country,	servāre	(pre-serve).
It is,	patria, G. æ, f.	(patriotism).
Citizen,	est.	
To command,	cīvis, G. cīvis	(civil).
Easy,	impērare	(imperative).
Disgraceful,	facilis, m. f.; facile, n.	(facility).
Law,	turpis, m. f.; turpe, n.	(turpitude).
	lex, legis, f.	(legislation).

60. *Humanum* est errāre.

*Natural-to-man* it-is to err<sup>n</sup>.

*Christiāni* est neminem violāre.

The part } of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.  
The duty }

61. To lie is ° disgraceful. (Lat.)

*It is disgraceful to lie.* (Eng.)

62. After 'it is,' such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, is untranslated.

In turning Latin into English, when a genitive follows *est* (*erat, fuit, &c.*), such a substantive as *mark, duty, business, part*, must be supplied.

<sup>n</sup> ¶ An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb; and the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter* gender.

<sup>o</sup> ¶ When an infinitive mood is the *nominative* case to the sentence, in English we put 'it' before the verb 'is.'

This 'it,' which represents, as it were, the coming sentence, must not be translated into Latin.

It is the part It is the duty It is the business It is a mark It is of a wise man . . . . .	}	of a wise man, &c. (Eng.)     . . . . . (Lat.)
---	---	---

## Exercise 13.

63. It is a great *thing* not to fear death. It is a little *thing* not to fear a fox. The slave had kept his word. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gate of the city. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. It is natural to man to value money *at-a-high-price*<sup>2</sup>. It is a mark of an unlearned man to value wisdom *at-a-low-price*<sup>3</sup>.

Turpe est poētæ domum evertere. Humanum est peccare. *Patris* est filium suum sepelire. *Regis* est imperare. *Servi* est viam monstrare. Pater filium docuērat. Puella clamavērat. Mater filiam suam laudavērat. Caius cantavērit. Agricōla juravit. Impii (62) est virtutem *parvi* æstimare. Boni (62) est fidem servare. Impii est fidem violare.

## Lesson 14.

64. For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns the accusative plural ends in *s*; for neuters in *ā*.

RULE. To get the *acc. plur.* from *acc. sing.*

(1) For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns, turn *um* of the 2nd into *os*: in the other declensions, turn *m* into *s*.

(2) For neuters add *a* to the *root*<sup>1</sup>.

Hence the terminations of the *acc. plur.* are,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
ās,	ōs,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.

*Obs.* The vowel before *s* is long. *Acc. plur.* of all neuters ends in *ā*.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *ia* must be added; for which rules will be given below.

Exercise 14.

65. It is disgraceful to break (one's) word. It is (the duty) of a Christian to keep (his) word. It is (the part) of a Christian, not to offend-against the laws of his country. The good citizen will observe the laws of his country. The master has taught the boys. It is natural-to-man to avoid pain. Balbus will break his word. The fox had frightened the boys. He disregards the labours of his slave.

Pater meus fidem servaverat. Indocti est (62) sapientiam parvi aestimare<sup>3</sup>. Turpe est fidem suam non servare. CAIUS fidem suam non servavit. Christiani est neminem violare. Neminem violavit.

Lesson 15.

66. The remaining cases of the singular :

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Dative	æ	ō	ī	uī	eī
Ablative	ā	ō	ē*	ū	ē

67. The *Dative* is to be construed by TO or FOR.

The *Ablative* is to be construed by WITH, BY, FROM.

The *Ablative* sometimes relates to *time*, and must then be construed by AT or IN: when it relates to *place*, by AT OR FROM †.

68. VOCABULARY 13.

Hand,	mān-us, ūs, f.	(manual).
To labour,	} lābōrare.	
To be in trouble,		
To appease,	plācāre	(placable).
Mind,	anim-us, i	(magn-anīmi-ty).
Gift,	donum	(donative).

Exercise 15.

The thing *with which* is put in the ablative.

69. The boy will show the road *to* the husbandman. The girl will open the letter *with* her-own hand. The


\* Unless you are told to use *i*, which is sometimes the ablative form.

† *From* after a verb of *motion*.

boy will hear voices. Death will not terrify Christians. The slave will shut the gates *for* the king. Death frightens the impious. It is natural-to-man to fear death. He will appease the boy *with* a gift. He has appeased the boy's mind. He will have appeased the boy's mind *with* a gift.

Agricolæ est laborāre. Puer discet. Servus domini vocem timēbit. Christiāni est virtūtem laudāre. Caii animum dono placavērit. Iram meam dono placavērat. Puella cantābit. Puer ludēbat.

Lesson 16.

70.  Adjectives ending in *is*, have Gen. *is*, and are therefore of the *third*. They are *masculine* and *feminine*. Their neuter form is *e*, Gen. *is*, &c.; and the ablative singular is *i*\*.


71. VOCABULARY 14.

Rome,	Rōma.	
Carthage,	Carthāgo, Carthagin- <i>is</i> , f.	
The space-of-two-years,	biennium	( <i>biennial</i> ).
Winter,	hiems, hiem- <i>is</i> , f.	( <i>hiemation</i> ).
To sleep,	dormire	( <i>dor-mouse</i> ).
Bear,	ursus, i.	
Cave,	antrum.	
One,	unus, una, unum †	( <i>unit</i> ).
To rest,	quiescere	( <i>quiescent</i> ).
To chastise,	castigare	( <i>castigation</i> ).
To remain,	manere	( <i>mansion</i> ).
To live,	vivere	( <i>re-vive</i> ).
Earth,	terra	( <i>terrestrial</i> ).
Faithful,	fidelis	( <i>fidelity</i> ).
Year,	ann-us, i	( <i>annual</i> ).

72. Romæ. Tarenti. Tibure ‡.  
*at Rome. at Tarentum. at Tibur.*

\* A table of the terminations of an adj. in '*is*' is given at p. 112 (16, 1).

† This word, with some others, has this peculiarity: *unus, una, and unum*, all make their *Gen. unus*, and their *Dat. uni*, instead of the regular Genitives and Datives of the first and second declensions.

‡  If the name of a town *at which* any thing is done, be of the *first* or *second* declension, and *singular* number, it is put in the *genitive*; if not, in the *ablative*.

Caius	annum	unum <sup>t</sup>	Cortōnæ	vixit.
Caius	year	one	at Cortona	lived.
<i>Hieme</i>	ursus	in	antro	dormit.
<i>In winter</i>	<i>the bear</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>a cave</i>	<i>sleeps.</i>

73. *Obs.* The preposition in English is not to be translated before *the name of a town*, or a noun of *time*

(a) Before a noun of time, consider, whether it tells you *when* the thing was (or, is to be) done; or *how long* it lasted (or is to last<sup>t</sup>).

#### Exercise 16.


74. *In-winter* the earth rests. My father was living *at-Rome*. Balbus is-remaining *at-Carthage*. It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a good citizen to remain *at-Rome*. In winter the bear will remain in (its) cave. He will remain *at-Rome for-the-space-of-two-years*. He has kept his word unwillingly (57). It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a father to chastise his son. The slave is walking in the garden. He is remaining *at-Tibur* unwillingly. *In-the-winter*, he will play in the garden.


Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābit. Pater filium castigavērat. Puer in antro dormiēbat. Lex Christiāna avaritiam damnavērat. Pater filium castigavērit. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Facīle est, pueri animum dono placare. Puella in horto ludēbat.

#### Lesson 17.

(On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in p or b.)

75. In these verbs the root of the *perfect* may generally be got from the root of the *present* by adding s.

 But *bs* must be written *ps*.

<sup>t</sup>  Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how-long* in the *accusative*.



76. EXAMPLES: Root of pres. *rēp*; root of perf. *reps*.  
 Root of pres. *nūb*; root of perf. *nups*  
 (not *nubs*).

## 77. VOCABULARY 15.

To write,	scribēre	(scribe).
To marry (of a female),	nūbēre	(nuptials <sup>u</sup> ).
To pluck; to card; to carp at,	carpēre.	
Wool,	lana.	
Flower,	flos, flōris	(florist).
Grape,	uva	(uvula).
Whole,	{ totus: with G. totius; D. toti	{ (total).
Letter,	{ See unus, p. 111 (8, 10).	{ (epistolary).
	epistōla	

a. Nubēre 'to marry' is followed by the *dative*, not by the *accusative*.

b. A case of *suus* must be con-  
 strued { his, her, its, their; (or)  
 { his own, her own, its own, their own;  
 according as the nominative is a  
 'he,' a 'she,' an 'it,' or a 'they.'

He wrote it } manu suā { with his own hand.  
 She wrote it } with her own hand.

## Exercise 17.

78. The boy was writing a letter. The girl wrote a letter. The slave had written a letter. (It) is easy (60, note *n*) to write a letter. The girl will marry Caius (77, a). The girl was carding wool. It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a Christian to observe the laws of his country. The girl had plucked a flower. The boy will pluck the grape. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter\*.

Sapientis est virtūtem ∇ magni aestimāre. Epistōlam Romæ scripsit. Facile est, lanam carpēre. Quantum habet voluptātis industria! Puella epistōlam suā manu scripsit. Caius epistōlam suā manu scribēbat.

<sup>7</sup> This word properly means 'to veil'; hence 'to put on a bridal veil'; 'to marry.' It governs the *dative*, as meaning 'to veil for a person.'

\* In what case is *whole winter* to be put? (p. 27, note *t*)

∇ From *virtus, virtutis*.

## Lesson 18.

## Terminations of the third plural.

79. The *third plural* of a verb may be got from the *third singular* by changing *t* into *nt*.

(a) But this rule does not hold good of the termination '*it*,' which must be changed thus :

'*it*' must be changed  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in the fourth conj. into } iunt. \\ \text{in the perfect into } . . \bar{e}runt. \\ \text{in 'erit' into } . . . int. \\ \text{in other cases into } . . unt* . \end{array} \right.$

## Exercise 18.

## 80. Construe :

- (1) Amat, amant : monet, monent : regit, regunt : audit, audiunt : amavit, amavērunt.
- (2) Find the *third* person plural corresponding to each of the following forms :  
Amābat ; monēbit ; reget ; rexērit ; audiet ; plorābit ; rexit (*perf.*) ; clamavērit, clamabit ; scripsit, audiet.

## (3) Translate :

They will command. They have walked in the garden. They have written a letter. They were praising the faithful slave. They had praised the slave's fidelity. They will have sung. They will remain at Rome the whole winter. They will fear the lion. They will have chastised the slave. They will pull down the avaricious man's house. They will value money at-a-low-price. They will lose some time. Wisdom has much pleasure. They will wrong nobody. They have wronged nobody. It is the duty of a Christian to avoid avarice. They will appease the girl's anger. They were writing letters.

---

\* Thus, sepēl-*it*,            sepēl-*iunt*.  
stet-*it*,                    stet-*erunt*.  
stet-*erit*,                stet-*erint*.  
reg-*it*,                     reg-*unt*.

## Lesson 19.

81. Plural terminations of substantives and adjectives:

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
<i>Nom.</i>	æ,	i,	ūs,	ūs,	ūs.
<i>Gen.</i>	ārum,	ōrum,	um,	} uum,	} ērum.
			or ium *,		

## 82. VOCABULARY 16.

Greatness,	magnitudo, G. <i>dimis</i> , fem.	( <i>magnitude</i> ).
A leaf,	folium, G. <i>folii</i>	( <i>foliage</i> ).
To retain,	retinēre	( <i>retinue</i> ).
To fall down,	decid-ēre	( <i>deciduous</i> ).
Autumn,	auctumnus, G. <i>i</i> .	
The country;	rus <sup>w</sup> , G. <i>rūris</i>	( <i>rural</i> ).
To fly (out),	e-vul-āre (e, <i>out</i> : volare, <i>to fly</i> )	( <i>volatile</i> ).
From; out of;	e or ex, governing the <i>ablative</i> :	
In,	in, governing the <i>abl.</i>	

Determine by the Table, given at p. 16, note *g*, the genders of *dolor*, *auctumnus*, *rūs*, *urbis*.

☞ 'In,' when it means 'into,' governs the accusative.

## Exercise 19.

83. The husbandmen are building a wall. The boys will show the road. Christians will not fear death. The citizens will pull down Sulla's house. Wise (men) value true greatness of mind *very highly*<sup>2</sup>. The unlearned value wisdom at-a-low-price. My friends will not disregard my sorrow. The leaves fall down *in autumn*<sup>12</sup>. The slaves will avenge the death of their master. The boys will hear a voice. The slaves will show the gardens. They will appease the anger of the husbandmen with a gift.

Impii mortem timēbunt. *Christiāni est*<sup>7</sup> pecuniam parvi aestimāre<sup>3</sup>. Fidem suam inviti<sup>5</sup> servav-erunt. Rūs<sup>y</sup> ex urbe evolābunt. *Invitus*<sup>5</sup> domi (168) manē-

\* *Um* is to be used when you are not told to put *ium*.

<sup>w</sup> *Patria* is the *country* of which we are citizens; *rus* is 'the country,' as opposed to 'the town.'

<sup>y</sup> *Into the country*, by a rule to be given presently.

bat. Puërum in urbe sepel-iv-ērunt. Patres filios suos docuērant. Puellæ clamavērunt. Puëri vulpem non timēbunt.

Lesson 20.

On finding the nominative of the third declension from any other case.

84. The most common way of all is given in the following Rule :

(1) Find the *root*<sup>z</sup>, and add *s* to it.

- a) For *cs*, *gs*, you must write *x*; and if a *t* sound (that is, *t* or *d*) or *r* stand before *s*, throw it away.
- b) If the letters before *s* are *nt*, sometimes *t* only is thrown away: sometimes both consonants.
- c) Besides this a *short i* in the last syllable should be changed into *e*.

(2) Another way is to throw away the *last letter* of the root.

- a) This applies principally to *n* (sometimes to *r*, *l*).
- b) An *i* before *n* should be changed into *o*, as *consuetudin-em* (*consuetudi*) *consuetūdo*.

(3) A third way is to add *is*, *es*, or (for *neuters*) *e* to the root.

(4) Sometimes 'ēr,' 'ör,' as the last letters of a root, should be changed into 'ūs;' and 'it' into 'ut'<sup>a</sup>.

<sup>z</sup> Sometimes the *root* is itself the *nominative*.

<sup>a</sup> EXAMPLES.—From *ped-es* we get *ped-s* = *pes* [by (1) *a*]; from *frutic-is*, *frutics* = *frutix* = *frutex*: *civitāt-em*, *civitat-s*, *civitās*: *animant-em*, *animant-s*, *animans*: *elēphant-is*, *elēphant-s*, *elēphas* [(1) *b*]. By (2) *longitudin-em*, *longitudi*, *longitūdo*: *farris*, *farr*, *far*: *felle*, *fell*, *fel*. By (3) *nub-em*, *nub-es*; *ret-i*, *ret-e*. By (4) *latēr-is*, *latūs*; *corpōr-is*, *corpūs*; *capit-is*, *capūt*.

## 85. VOCABULARY 17.

	ROOT.	NOM.	
A flock,	grĕg,	grex, m.	( <i>greg-arious</i> ).
A shrub,	frutĕ,	frutex, f.	
A state,	civitatĕ	civitas, f.	( <i>city</i> ).
An elephant	elephant	ĕlephas, m.	
Custom,	consuetudin	consuetudo, f.	
Honey,	mell	mel, n.	( <i>melli-fluous</i> ).
Side,	latĕr	latus, n.	( <i>lateral</i> ).
Head,	capit	caput, n.	( <i>capital</i> ).
Body,	corpĕr	corpus, n.	( <i>corporal</i> ).
Cloud,	nub	nubes, f.	

## Exercise 20.

86. The boys will not fear the elephant. The slave will show the shrub. Balbus had praised my custom. He feels a pain in his side (*say*, of his side). The boy will feel a pain in his head (*say*, of his head). The lion will not fear the elephant. The slave had shown the shrub in his master's garden. He will retain his father's custom. The state will observe its laws. The husbandman had shown his flocks. He will laugh-at the flock of unlearned men. My father feared the cloud.

Caius leges civitatis violaverit. Christiani est<sup>7</sup> neminem violare. Servus mortui elephantis corpus puero monstrabat. Puella epistolam suam manu scripsit. Facile est lanam carpere. Biennium Carthagine manebunt. Domini servos fideles vindicaverant. Dominorum est<sup>7</sup> fideles servos laudare. Patris est filium suum docere. Figurae nihil<sup>4</sup> habent stabilitatis. Hieme ursi in antro dormiunt. Biennium Romae manebit. Christianus neminem violabit. Fideles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

## Lesson 21.

87. The Imperative may be got from the infinitive by throwing away *re* (*amā, monē, regĕ, audī*).

88. 'Not' with imperatives is *nē*,  
A 'non' is hateful then to see.

Crabrones *nē* irrita.  
*Hornets do-not irritate* (Do not irritate hornets).

89. VOCABULARY 18.

It is,	est.	
Wasp,	vespa.	
To irritate,	irritāre.	
Hornet,	crabr-o, ōnis.	
Never,	nunquam.	
Useful, profitable,	ūtil-is	(utility).

Exercise 21.

[The 'do' before 'not' is only the auxiliary verb belonging to the following verb.]

90. Do-not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* (57) irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do-not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time*<sup>4</sup>. The figure will have *no stability*<sup>4</sup>. Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

Patriæ tuæ leges *nē* violā. Veram animi \* magnitudinem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*<sup>7</sup> fidem suam servāre. Turpe est, patriæ suæ leges violāre. Poētas *nē* irrita. *Christiani est*<sup>7</sup> neminem irritare. *Invitus saltavērat*. *Portas urbis invitus claudēbat*. *Invitus peccavit*. Humanum est peccare. Ne pecca. Nunquam est utile peccare.

\* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adjective and substantive.

## Lesson 22.

On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a k sound  
(that is, in *c*, *g*, or *qu*).

91. The common way is, to add *s* to the root of the present; remembering that,

☞ Any *k* sound with *s* = <sup>c</sup> *x* [that is, for *cs*, *gs*, or *qus*, write *x*].

Thus from *cing-ère*, *tæg-ère*, *dic-ère*, *cöqu-ère*<sup>d</sup>, we get for the roots of the perfect,

(cing-s)	(teg-s)	(dic-s)	(coqu-s)
<i>cinx</i> ,	<i>tex</i> ,	<i>dix</i> ,	<i>cox</i> .


## 92. VOCABULARY 19.

Attack,	oppugnare.	
Greatest,	{ summus; properly <i>highest</i> , but the general word for <i>greatest</i> , when <i>qualities</i> are spoken of.	
To surround,	cing-ère	( <i>cincture</i> ).
To cover,	tæg-ère	( <i>in-tegu-ment</i> ).
To say,	dic-ère	( <i>diction</i> ).
To cook; bake; ripen,	{ cöqu-ère	( <i>de-coction</i> ).
Fault, blame,	culpa	( <i>culpable</i> ).
Lie,	mendäcium	( <i>mendacious</i> ).
Cloak,	pallium	{ (to <i>palliate</i> an offence; <i>i. e.</i> to <i>cloak</i> it).
Folly,	stultitia	( <i>stultify</i> ).
Food,	cibus.	
The sun,	sol, söl-is, <i>m</i> .	( <i>solar</i> ).
To fill,	complere	( <i>complement</i> ).
All,	{ omnis: cunctus (the lat- ter word means ' <i>all</i> ' <i>taken together</i> ')	( <i>omni-potent</i> ).
To illuminate,	illustrare	( <i>illustrate</i> ).
Light,	lux, lüc-is	( <i>lucid</i> ).
River,	{ flumen, flumïn-is. What <i>gender</i> ? [See page 16, note <i>g</i> .]	
Assumed-appear- ance; pretence,	{ simulatio, <i>G.</i> simulati- önis	( <i>dis-simulation</i> ).
Whole,	{ totus, a, um: but <i>G. to-   tius</i> , <i>D. toti</i> . In other cases, regular. [See page 111, 10.]	( <i>total</i> ).
Prudence,	prudencia.	

<sup>c</sup> This mark means 'equals,' or, 'is the same as.'

<sup>d</sup> Qu = *kw*; pronounce *cokwëre*.

93. Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat.  
*The sun all (things) with his light illuminates.*

94.  'Thing' 'things,' are often not expressed in Latin: the adjective must then be put in the neuter.

Exercise 22.

95. He surrounds his head with a garland. He had surrounded the city with a wall. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. The boy had said nothing. The girl had cooked the food. Do not cover (your) fault with a lie. The slave has said many (things). The sun fills all (things) with its light. The assumed-appearance of folly covered great wisdom. It is the business<sup>7</sup> of the slave to cook the food for his master. It is never useful to lose time. How much<sup>4</sup> pleasure has he had?

Sol *cuncta* suâ luce illustravĕrat. Christiâni<sup>7</sup> non est, mendacio culpam tegĕre. Puĕri dixĕrunt. Flumen urbem cingit. *Totam hiĕmem*<sup>12)</sup> ursus in antro dormiĕbat. Amicus amici corpus suo pallio tegĕbat. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiæ texĕrat. Hannibal Saguntum oppugnabat. Turpe est peccare. Biennium Romæ manebunt. Carthagine *inviti* manĕbant.

Lesson 23.

*On finding the root of the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a t sound (that is, d or t).*

96. Here too the root of the perfect is generally got from the root of the present by adding *s*.

The *t* sound must be thrown away before this *s*, and the preceding vowel, *if short*, made long.

Claud-o,	claud-s,	claus.
Divid-o,	divid-s,	divĭs.



97. The remaining cases of the plural of substantives.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

Dat. } is, ibūs, cēbūs. (In the *fourth* it is some-  
Abl. } times ūbus.)

98. VOCABULARY 20.

Cave,	antrum.		
To divide,	divid-ere.		
Part,	pars, partis. Gender? (p. 16, g.)		
Three,	{ tres, neut. tria (declined regu- larly; gen. <i>trium</i> ).		
A man,	{ vir *, G. viri (declined like a noun of second).		
To accuse,	accūsāre.		
Theft,	furtum	( <i>furtive</i> ).	
Bribery,	ambītus, G. ūs.	( <i>ambition</i> ).	
To acquit,	absolvēre	( <i>absolve; absolution</i> ).	
Beauty,	pulchritudo, dinis, f.		
Treachery,	proditio, G. ōnis.		
To death (con- demned),	{ may be translated by <i>capitis</i> { ('of the head'). [100, 101.]		
Into,	in, with the accusative.		
Because,	quā.		
Always,	semper.		
Ability,	ingenium	( <i>ingenious</i> ).	
Space of three years,	{ triennium	{ ( <i>triennial</i> ).	
Singular (re- markable),	{ eximi-us, a, um.		
99.	Puer	eximiā	pulchritūdine.
	A boy	of singular	beauty.
	Caium	proditionis <sup>e</sup>	accūsant.
	Caius	of treachery	they accuse.

\* *Homo*, G. *hominis*, and *vir* are both 'man;' but *homo* is 'man' as opposed to *other* animals; that is, 'a human being;' whereas '*vir*' is 'man' as opposed to 'woman.'

When '*men*' means 'human beings,' '*men*' generally (including both sexes), it should be translated by *homīnes*.

When '*man*' is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by '*homo*,' because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.

When '*man*' is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by '*vir*,' because *man* is *superior* to *woman*.

<sup>e</sup> Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, and *condemning*, take a *genitive* of the *charge*. As transitive verbs they, of course, take an *accusative* of the person accused.

100. ONS. Where we describe a person or thing by a *substantivo* and *adjective* governed by 'qf,' the Romans used either the *genitive* or the *ablative*.

101. (Eng.) To condemn a person to death.  
To condemn a person of the head<sup>f</sup> (*capitis*).

Exercise 23.

102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (*neut. plur.*) (the things) into three parts. He will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do-not divide the food. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating all (things) with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. Virtue is the highest wisdom. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ<sup>11)</sup> vivit. Balbum ambītūs accusavērant. Quantum cibi<sup>\*</sup> amittunt! Balbum proditiōnis absolvent. Balbum capītis damnābunt. Hiēme (72) ursi in antris dormiunt. Triennium (72, note t) Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus Caium accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditiōnis accusavērat. Portas urbis clausērat. Balbi est, omnia (93, 94) in tres partes dividēre. Facile est saltare. Nunquam utile est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

Lesson 24.

Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by lengthening the vowel of the present: as *ēd-ere, ēd.*

<sup>f</sup> We may suppose that it was originally 'to condemn a person to the loss of the head,' or rather 'to a punishment of the head.'

104. If the vowel of the present is *ā*, the root of the perf. will have *ē*. Thus *cāp-ere*, *cēp*.

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute.

Thus *frang-ĕre*, *frāg*, *frēg* (break).  
*rump-ĕre*, *rup*, *rūp* (burst; break through).  
*vinc-ĕre*, *vic*, *vīc* (conquer).

## 106. VOCABULARY 21.

Buy,	ĕm-ĕre, r. ĕm	(pre-emption).
Take,	} <i>cāp-ere</i> , r. <i>cēp</i> , from <i>capiō</i> , p. 61 <i>x</i> (captive).	
Receive,		
Arm,	<i>brāchium</i> .	
Treaty,	<i>fœdus</i> , <i>fœderis</i> (neut.) 81, 4	(con-feder-ate).
Chain,	<i>vincŭlum</i> .	
Prison,	<i>carcer</i> (carceris, 81, z)	(in-carcer-ate).
A Gaul,	<i>Gallus</i> .	
Enemy,	<i>hostis</i> , G. <i>hostis</i>	(hostile).
From,	(after <i>receivē</i> , <i>cāpere</i> ), <i>ex</i> with <i>abl.</i>	
To break (one's)	} <i>fidem fallere</i> .	
word, &c.,		

## Exercise 24.

107. Caius had broken his arm. The Gauls had broken-through the treaty. They had broken-through the treaty. It is disgraceful to break-through a treaty. Cæsar conquered the Gauls. It is not easy to conquer the Gauls. He had appeased Balbus with the greatest prudence. They will break-through their chains. They had broken-through the chains of their prison. It is easy to break (one's) arm. They are losing much <sup>4</sup> money. He was losing much pleasure. They will condemn Balbus to death. He had conquered his enemies. Balbus has broken his arm at Rome.

*Nunquam utile est fœdus rumpĕre. Nunquam ūtile est fidem fallĕre, quia semper est turpe. Facile est puerorum animos donis placare. Turpe est fœdera negligĕre. Galli negligĕbant fœdera. Utile est omnibus laborare. Nemo semper labōrat. Caius brachium suum Carthagīne frĕgĕrat. Culpas suas simulationē virtūtis textit. Quantum <sup>4</sup> mellis ĕmĕrunt! Quantum voluptatis ceperunt! Multum voluptatis ex meo dolōre cĕpĕrant.*

Lesson 25.

107\*. The letter R will be used to denote root of the present; r, root of the perfect; ρ, root of the supine.

108. VOCABULARY 22.

Hope,	spēs, spei.	
Colour,	color, G. colōr-is.	Gender?
An estate,	fundus.	
Large,	grandis	(grand).
Price,	pretium	(appreciate).
Immense; huge,	ingens, G. ingent-is.	
Conquered,	victus, a, um	(victory, &c.).
To dwell,	habitāre	(habitation).
To reign,	regnāre.	
Sardis, or Sardes,	Sardes (a plural noun), G. Sardinum, &c.	
Thebes,	Thēbæ, G. Thebārum : plur. noun.	
Victory,	victōria.	
Nightingale,	luseinia.	
Much,	multus.	
Many,	multī	(multitude).
To flourish,	florēre, r. floru.	
Often,	sæpe.	
Peace,	pax, pācis	(pac-ific).
Athens,	Athenæ, Athenarum, used only in the plural.	

109. Spem pretio (110) non emo.  
 Hope for a price not do I buy.

110. After a verb of buying, 'for' may be considered a sign of the ablative.

That is to say, 'for' is to be untranslated; and the noun that expresses the price, put in the ablative.

Exercise 25.

[In what case is the price for which put?] (110)

111. He has bought the estate for a large sum-of-money. The conquered often buy peace for an immense sum of money. He had dwelt many years<sup>12)</sup> at Athens<sup>11)</sup>. Cræsus reigned at Sardis. He has bought a victory with (that is, for) much blood. He will have dwelt many years at Rome. The nightingale changes (her) colour in the autumn<sup>12)</sup>. It is impious not to love (one's) parents. Caius had broken his arm. Cæsar has conquered the Gauls.

[When is the place where put in the gen.? when in the abl.??]

(72, note s.)

*Thebis* Pindārus floruit. *Multos annos* Romæ habitavērunt. Impium est, leges patriæ violāre. *Invītus* legem violāvīt. *Invīti* leges violaverant. *Balbum* capitis damnavērunt. *Biennium* Romæ habitabunt. *Patriæ tuæ* leges ne viōla. *Caium* proditiōnis accusabunt.

---

Lesson 26.

112. Since, in the *third* conjugation, both the *present* and the *perfect* have their third person in 'it,' it is well to learn how to distinguish a third person of the *perfect* from a third person of the *present*.
113. a) If 'it' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the *perfect*.  
 b) If 'it' has *u* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the *perfect*<sup>k</sup>.  
 c) If the two first *consonants* of the root are the same, the tense is the *perfect*.  
 (Thus 'tetendit' is the *perfect*.)  
 d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is *very often* the *perfect*.

114. VOCABULARY 23.

Some verbs form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is, *redoubling*.

Bite,	mord-ĕre, r. (107*) mōmord	(re-morse).
Hang (neut.),	pend-ĕre, r. pēpend	(sus-pend).
Shear, shave,	tōnd-ĕre, r. tōtōnd	(tonsure).
Change,	mutare	(mutability).
<hr/>		
Shoulder,	lumĕrus, G. i.	
Beard,	barba	(barber).
Sheep,	ovis, G. ovis.	
Flay,	de-glūb-ĕre (see 75).	
Shepherd,	past-or, G. ōris	(pastor).
Wolf,	lūpus, G. i.	
From,	ab, governing the ablative.	
Arrow,	sagitta.	
Dog,	canis, G. canis	(canine).

Exercise 26.

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging

---

<sup>k</sup> This is *certain* in the case of *āv-it*, *īv-it*. But *arguit*, *congruit*, *imbuit*, *statuit*, &c., are of the *present*.


from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have surrounded the city with walls. They have *unwillingly* offended-against the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris<sup>7</sup> est tondere oves, non deglubere. Sagittae ab humero pependērunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totondit. Pastores agricolas riserunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. Boni canis<sup>7</sup> non est oves mordere. Tonde oves; ne deglube. Servus portas urbis clausērit. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. Lusciniā colorem mutabunt. Auctumno lusciniā colorem suum mutaverint.

Lesson 27.


116. Personal Pronouns.


	N.	G.	D.	Ac.Ab.	N.A.	G.	D.Abl.
<i>I,</i>	ego,	mei,	mīhi,	mē,	uōs,	nostrum or nostri,	nōbis,
<i>Thou,</i>	tū,	tuī,	tibi,	tē,	vōs,	vestrum or vestri,	vōbis.
<i>Him, her, it,</i>	} (none) sui, sibi, sē,			} (Plural the same as the singular.)			
<i>Them<sup>1</sup>,</i>							

 *Myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; themselves,* are also expressed (respectively) by these pronouns.

117. 'He gave *him* a book' means 'he gave a book to *him*.'

'He is like *him*' means 'he is like to *him*.'

118.  After verbs of *giving, paying, costing, &c.* put in '*to*' before the *accusative* of the person, and translate it in Latin by the *dative*.

119.  Adjectives of *likeness* take the *dative*<sup>m</sup> after them.

This means, that what seems the *accusative* after '*like*' must be translated into Latin by the *dative*.

<sup>1</sup> *Him, her, it, them,* are not translated by *sui, &c.*, unless they stand for the *same person or thing* that the *nominative* (or other *principal noun*) of the sentence stands for.

<sup>m</sup> But often the *genitive*. '*Similis mei*' means, he is like me in *character*; '*similis mihi*,' that he is like me in *face*.

## 120. VOCABULARY 24.

To give,	{ R. (107*) d-äre, r. däd. (This verb has ä in the last syllable but one.)	
To sell,	R. vend-äre, r. vendid.	
To stand; cost,	st-äre, r. stët	(station).
Gold,	aurum	(auriferous).
Silver,	argentum.	
Blood,	sanguis, sanguin-is, m.	(sanguinary).
Roman,	Romānus.	
Beast,	{ bellua (of large beasts; elephants, whales, &c.).	
Chain,	vinculum.	
To finish,	finire.	
Wicked,	impröbus, a, um.	
Orator,	orātor, G. tōris.	
Oration,	oratio, G. tionis, f.	
Twenty,	viginti, <i>indeclinable</i> .	
A talent,	talentum.	
Hippopotāmus,	hippopotāmus.	
The Nile,	Nīlus.	

121. Isocrātes orātor<sup>n</sup> unam oratiōnem  
*Isocrates the orator one oration*

viginti talentis vendidit.  
*for twenty talents sold.*

(The orator Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.)

## Exercise 27.

122. The Hippopotāmus, a great beast, dwells in the Nile. Caius, a wicked man (98, note), will sell his country for gold. He has sold his country for gold. *How much*<sup>4</sup> silver had he given his slave? Victory cost the Romans (118) much blood<sup>o</sup>. Do not sell your honour for gold. It is *the part*<sup>7</sup> of a Christian to think little of<sup>3</sup> gold and silver. Balbus had burst the chains of his prison. It is the part of a Christian to praise the good.

Improbōrum est<sup>7</sup>, patriam auro vendere. Anīmus carcēris sui vincūla rumpēbat. Fidem suam auro

<sup>n</sup> When two nouns are spoken of the same thing, the second is put in the same case as the first.

The second is then said to be 'in apposition' to the first. Hence 'apposition' is when the second noun is a name, or title, or description of the preceding ones.

<sup>o</sup> Remember that the blood was the price paid.

vendidērunt. Turpe est, fidem suam auro vendēre. *Quantum tibi argenti*<sup>4</sup> dedērat\*? Pastor ovem ton-  
dēbat. Agricōla labōrem finivērat.

## Lesson 28.

## Tenses of the Verb 'esse,' to be.

	Sing.	Plur.
123. Present,	est,	sunt.
Imperfect,	erāt,	erant,
Future,	erit,	erunt.

Root of perfect *fu*; and therefore the tenses with root of perfect formed regularly, *fuit*, *fuērat*, *fuērit*, *fuisse*.

124. The verb 'to be' takes a nominative (of either a substantive or an adjective) after it.

☞ An adjective after the verb agrees with the nominative before the verb.

## 125. VOCABULARY 25.

Happy,	{ felix <sup>r</sup> , G. felic-is beātus	(felicity). (the beatitudes).
Round,	rotundus, a, um	(rotundity).
Contented,	contentus <sup>s</sup> , governs the <i>abl.</i>	
Worthy,	dignus <sup>s</sup> , governs <i>abl.</i>	(dignity).
Unworthy,	indignus <sup>s</sup> , governs <i>abl.</i>	(indignity).
Endued,	præditus <sup>s</sup> .	
Relying on,	fretus <sup>s</sup> .	
Strength,	vires, G. virium, &c. Plural of <i>vis</i> .	
A little,	parvum, <i>neut. adj.</i> used as a substantive.	
Star,	stella	(constellation).
Free,	liber <sup>s</sup> , libera, liberum	(liberty).
Never,	nunquam.	
Very many,	plurimi, a, a.	
To do,	facere, p. 61, note x.	
To reign,	regnare.	

\* Remember that in a *question*, the auxiliary verb (*is*, *does*, &c.) stands before the nominative case.

<sup>r</sup> *Beātus* relates more to *true*, *inward* happiness than *felix*, which means *successful in one's undertakings*, &c.

<sup>s</sup> ☞ *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *contentus*, *fretus*, *liber*, &c. govern the *ablative*; that is, the *abl.* follows them without a preposition: so that the English '*with*,' '*from*,' '*of*,' &c., must not be translated after them.



126. Terra est rotunda.  
The earth is round.

(*Rotunda* nom. fem. to agree with *terra*, 124.)

Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.  
Very many stars suns are (are suns).

Exercise 28.

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*<sup>4</sup> (thing). Balbus, relying on his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127\*. (What does *luce* come from?—See 84, (1) a.)

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendidit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est. Improborum est<sup>7</sup> malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

Lesson 29.

128. ☞ The compounds of *esse* (except *posse*) govern the dative.

129. VOCABULARY 26.

(Compounds of *esse*; governing the *dative*.)

To do good; to be } prod-esse †, (r.) profu.  
serviceable,

<sup>†</sup> These forms follow the conjugation of *esse* exactly: but *prodesse* drops its *d* before those tenses of *esse* that begin with a consonant. Thus *pro-sunt*: not *prod-sunt*.

To be prejudicial,	ob-esse †, (r.) obfu.
To be engaged in,	inter-esse †, (r.) interfu.
As many as possible,	quam <sup>u</sup> plurimī, æ, a.
The greatest possible,	} quam <sup>u</sup> maximus, a, um.
The greatest <i>he can</i> , or <i>could</i> ,	
To raise (forces),	compārāre.
Forces,	copiæ, ārum, plur.
State,	civitas, G. tātis.
Battle,	prælium.
Anger,	ira.
Human,	humānus.
Race,	genūs, G. genēr-is. <i>What gender? (generic).</i>
Becomes,	fit, followed by the nominative.
By chance,	casu (abl. of casus, casūs) (casual).
To be wise,	sapere, sapio (sapiēt).

## Exercise 29.

130. Balbus was engaged in the battle. *It is the part of a Christian*<sup>7</sup> to do-good to *as many as possible*. Cæsar raises the *greatest forces he can*. Anger has cost the human race (118) much blood. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. Very-many men are unworthy (125, note s) of life. The Christian will do-good to *as many as possible*. Very-many cities were raising forces. Many states, relying on their strength, are raising forces. They condemned Caius, a man unworthy of life. The conquered will dwell at Sardes. Peace cost me a great sum-of-money. The son will avenge his father's blood.

Cæsar *quam maximas* copias comparaverat. Caius, vir summo ingenio præditus, Romæ habitat. Servus meus prælio interfuit. Fides plurimis profuit. Nemo fit casu bonus. Christianorum est<sup>7</sup> avaritiam damnare. Caius multis præliis interfuërat.

† See note in preceding page.

<sup>u</sup> How *quam* gives the meaning of '*as possible*' to a superlative, is explained in the '*Differences of Idiom*,' number 9.

## Lesson 30.

## Subjunctive Mood.

131.	1.	2.	3.	4.	} The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an <i>n</i> before the <i>t</i> .
PRESENT (R. <sup>v</sup> )	št,	čăt,	ăt,	ĩăt.	
IMPERFECT (R.)	ārět,	ērět,	ěrět,	ĩrět*.	
Perfect (r. <sup>v</sup> )	ērīt.				
Pluperfect (r.)	issět.				

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the subjunctive present is to be construed, 'he, &c. may —:' without *ut*, it must be 'let him —, &c.' or 'may he —, &c.'

133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative* takes *nē* for 'not' (*ne putet, do not let him think*).

## Exercise 30.

134. *Write down*: That <sup>w</sup> he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

*Construe*: Floreat. Ut florēret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irritet. Ut irritet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingēret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scripsisset. Ut scribēret. Plācet pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepeliret. Sepeliat filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapēre discant.

<sup>v</sup> R. means *root of present*.

r. — *root of perfect*.

\* OBS. The 3rd *sing.* of the *imperfect subjunctive* may be formed from the *infinitive* by adding *t*.

<sup>w</sup> 'Ut' is 'that.'

Lesson 31.

135. ☞ The infinitive in English often expresses a purpose: but the infinitive in Latin never does.

- (Eng.) I am come to see you.  
 (Lat.) I am come that I may see you.  
 (Eng.) I came to see you.  
 (Lat.) I came that I might see you.

136. ☞ The English infin. expressing a purpose may be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive.

137. The imperfect subjunctive must be used when the verb is of a past tense<sup>x</sup>; the present follows the other tenses.

138. ☞ The 'perfect with have' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something has been done in a still present period of time) is considered a present tense, and followed by the present subjunctive<sup>y</sup>.

Obs. Neuter verbs of motion form their perfect definite active with 'am:' so that 'He is come' = 'He has come,' and is followed by pres. subjunctive<sup>z</sup>.

139. VOCABULARY 27.

	R.	r.	
To eat,	ēd-ēre,	ēd (103)	(edible).
To come,	vēn-ire,	vēn (103)	(ad-vent).
To learn,	disc-ere,	disc-ere * (113, c)	(disciple).
To read,	lĕg-ere,	lĕg (103)	(legible).

140. (1) Vēnit ut portas claudat.  
 He is coming that the gates he may shut.  
 (He is coming to shut the gates.)

(2) Vēnit ut portas clauderet.  
 He came that the gates he might shut.  
 (He came to shut the gates.)

(3) Vēnit ut portas claudat.  
 He is come that the gates he may shut.  
 (He is come to shut the gates.)

<sup>x</sup> That is of the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect.

<sup>y</sup> It is just so in English:

- |                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| I write, or am writing, | } that I may, &c.   |
| I shall write,          |                     |
| I have written,         |                     |
| I was writing,          | } that I might, &c. |
| I wrote,                |                     |
| I had written,          |                     |

<sup>z</sup> So too 'was come' is the pluperf.

\* The syllable prefixed is called a reduplication.

## Exercise 31.

[What tense is 'he was come?' 138, z.]

141. He will come to surround the boy's head with a garland. He was come to surround the girl's head with a garland. He came to irritate the wasps. They were come to pull-down Sulla's house. He was come to give me an estate. They had come to condemn me to death<sup>a</sup>. Do not shut the gate. He was come to raise the greatest forces he could<sup>b</sup>. Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn<sup>a</sup> to read. The boy has learnt<sup>a</sup> to play.

[Construe *ut* with the subjunctive by the infinitive.]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis claudat. Vēnit<sup>b</sup>, *ut* quam maximas<sup>9</sup> copias compareret. Lēgit, *ut* discat. Edit, *ut* vivat. Edit, *ut* viveret. Non edunt, *ut* vivant; sed vivunt, *ut* edant. Romæ plurimi vivunt, *ut* edant. Veniat Caius, *ut* epistolam suâ manu scribat. Cantet puella. Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, *ut* Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, *ut* me audiat. Venērunt, *ut* me audiant. Venerunt, *ut* te audirent. Edunt, *ut* vitam conservent.

## Lesson 32.

142. After 'such,' 'so,' 'of such a kind,' &c. 'that' must be translated by 'ut,' and the verb after 'that' must be in the subjunctive in Latin, though in English it is in the indicative.

## 143. VOCABULARY 28.

So great,	tantus	(tantamount).
Mountain,	mons, mont-is, m.	
Highest,	summus	(summit).

<sup>a</sup> *Disco* is followed by the infinitive (not by *ut* with the subjunctive).

<sup>b</sup> OBS. When the present subjunctive follows a perfect, the perfect must be translated by 'has,' or, if it is a verb of motion, by 'is;' because the use of a present proves it to be the perfect definite. See 137.

Top of,	} summus, { in agreement with }	} (mediæval).
Middle, or midst of,		
Snow,	nix, niv-is. Gender?	
Alps,	Alpes, Alpium, &c.	
Cold,	frig-us, ðris. Gender?	(frigid).
Not-yet,	nondum.	
Fish,	piscis, G. pisc-is, m.	(piscatory).
Pavement,	pavimentum.	
White,	candidus, a, um	(candid).
Wine,	vinum	(vinous).
Preserve,	conservare	(conservative).
To swim,	nâtäre.	
To melt,	liquesc-ère, lieu	(liquid).

144. In summis Alpibus tantum est frigus,  
On the top of the Alps so great is the cold,

ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.  
that the snow there never melts.

145. (Eng.) On the top of the mountain.

(Lat.) On the highest mountain. (In summo monte.)

(Eng.) In the middle (or midst) of the waters.

(Lat.) In the middle waters. (In mediis aquis.)

### Exercise 32.

146. On the top of the mountain<sup>11</sup> the snow never melts. On the top of the Alps the snows never melt. The cold is so-great, that the snow is not-yet melted<sup>c</sup>. The fish is swimming in the middle of the water. Boys swim on the top of the waters. The pavement is swimming with wine. Let the slave come<sup>d</sup>. He was eating, to preserve his life. He will swim, to preserve his life. May the snows melt! The boy is singing on the top of the oak. The boys will dance on the top of the mountain.

Obs. The *subjunctive* after *ut* must be rendered in English by the indicative, when a *tantus* stands in the former clause.

In summis montibus tantum erat frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. Venit, ut patriam auro vendat.

<sup>c</sup> 'Is melted,' like 'is come,' is the *perf. active*.

<sup>d</sup> The *third person* of the *present subjunctive* is used as an *imperative*.

Impröbi homines patriam auro vendidērunt. In summo monte tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nondum licuērit<sup>e</sup>. Tanta est pueri industria, ut multa discat. Nix est candida. Vēnit, ut patriæ suæ leges violaret. Avis in summâ arbore cantabat.

Lesson 33.

147. Subjunctive of *esse*.

Present, *sit*.—Imperfect, *esset*. (*Fuērit, fuisset*, regular from *fu*.)

148. The verb '*can*,' '*am able*,' is made up of an old adjective '*potis*,' meaning '*able*,' and the verb '*to be*:' but the two words were run together into *one* with some change.

149. To get the third persons of '*to be able*' from '*to be*.'

Place *pot* before the *third* persons of *to be*, throwing away the *f* from those that begin with that letter; and change *t* into *s* before another *s*, shortening *potess* into *poss*. We thus get (from the forms in 123) *potest, possunt*: *potērat*: *potērit, potērunt*: and *potu* (for *potfu*) for the root of the *perfect*.

The subjunctive will be *possit, posset*; &c. Infin. *posse*.

150. Some verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, throw away the *k* sound before *s*:

sparg-ēre, spars.  
merg-ēre, mers.

151. VOCABULARY 29.

Nest,	nīdus.		
Bird,	avis, <i>G.</i> avis		(aviary).
Seed,	sēmen, semīnis.	Gender?	(disseminate).
Dangerous,	pericul-ōsus*		(perilous).
Danger,	pericūlum		(peril).
Victim,	victīma.		
Altar,	āra.		

<sup>e</sup> What was said of the *present* and *imperfect* subjunctive, may be extended to the *perfect* and *pluperfect*.

The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the *past tenses*.

\* Adjectives in *ōsus* mean *full of* what the substantive they are derived from denotes: as, *periculosus*, *full of danger*.





[In a question, the auxiliary verb must stand before the nominative case: and the form 'do—does,' 'did,' must be used for the present and perfect respectively. (The perfect definite must still be translated by *have, has.*)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immerserant. Periculōsum est, *hieme*<sup>12)</sup> se in flumen immergēre. Puer se in flumen immergat<sup>30)</sup>. *Agricolārum est*<sup>7</sup> semina auctumno<sup>9)</sup><sup>b</sup> spargēre. Nonnē in *summis Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? *Avis in summā quercu* nidum construxerat. Scripsitnē Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adpersit. Num rex portas urbis suā manu claudet? Nonnē boni est pastoris<sup>7</sup> tondere oves, non deglubere?

---

Lesson 34.

Root of Supine.

155. There are two *supines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. ☞ The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose*: it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active* (*amātum, to love*).

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive*.

But it may be Englished by the *infn. act.* when that gives better English<sup>h</sup>. Both supines are *really active*: *factum* is '(for) doing:' *factu*, 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the *root of the supine*.

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked by *p.*) ends in *t*; sometimes in *s*.

159. In the *first, second, and fourth* conjugations, the *root of the supine* is regularly obtained by adding

---

<sup>h</sup> See 163.

1.            2.            4.  
*āt,*        *īt,*            *īt,*        to the roots of the present.  
 (amāt) (monīt) (audīt)

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s* (especially to the *t* sounds).

160. Obs. Any *p* sound before *t* is *pt* (or *pt* = *pt* or *bt*).

Any *k* sound before *t* is *ct* (or *ct* = *ct*, *gt*, or *gut*).

Hence *scrib-tum*, *reg-tum*, must be written *scriptum*, *rectum*. Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s*. (See 96, 150.)

161. VOCABULARY 30.

To forage (supine),	pabulātum.
To fetch water (supine),	aquātum.
To lie down,	eubītum (supine from <i>cubāre</i> ).
To go to bed; to go to roost,	cubītum ire.
To send,	mitt-ĕre, r. mīs (for mit-s); p. miss (re-mit).
To go,	ire <sup>k</sup> .
To go a hunting,	{ venātum ire (venātum, supine, to) hunt } (venison).
To go away,	ab-ire <sup>k</sup> , r. abi.
To return,	red-ire <sup>k</sup> , r. redi.
Hen,	gallina.
Evening,	vesp-er, G. ĕris (vespers).
Legion,	legi-o, G. ōnis. Gender?
Fourth,	quartus.
Pleasant,	jūcundus.
To seek, to sue for,	petere, r. petiv-, p. petit (petition).
Ambassador,	legat-us, i (legate).

162. Mittit legātos pacem petītum.

*He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for (to sue for peace).*

163. (Eng.) It is hard to say<sup>1</sup>.

(Lat.) It is hard (in) saying (difficile est dictu).

<sup>k</sup> *Ire* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. iv. : p. ĭt.

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Pres.	it.	eunt.	eat.	The participle, which will be wanted presently, is <i>iens</i> , G. <i>euntis</i> , &c.
Imperf.	ibat.		iret.	
Fut.	ibit.			Gerunds, <i>eundi</i> , &c.

The compounds *ab-ire*, *red-ire*, are conjugated exactly in the same way (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms), but they generally drop *v* from the root of the perf. (*redi-ĕrit*, *redi-isset*, &c.; not *redivĕrit*, *redivisset*).

<sup>1</sup> Hence after *hard*, *pleasant*, &c., the active infinitive is to be translated by the *supine* in *u*.

## Exercise 34.

164. The hens go to roost in the evening. The boy had gone a hunting. Cæsar has sent the fourth legion to forage. Has not Cæsar sent the fourth legion to fetch water? Are not the boys gone<sup>29)</sup> a hunting? Cæsar has not-yet returned to Rome<sup>m</sup>. Cæsar had returned from Geneva to Rome. Balbus will go-away in the evening.

[Form the supine in u from aud-ire: fac-ere (159).]

Nonnē cubitum eunt gallinæ vespēri? Timīda avis in summā quercu nidum construēbat. Plato Tarentum vēnit. Servum Athēnas misērat. Caium Athēnas mittat<sup>30)</sup>. Jucundum est audītu. Difficile est factu (163). Nonnē sacerdōtes aram sanguine adpersērunt? Sacerdōtis est, aras omnes victimārum sanguine adspērgere. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram sanguine adspērgat.

## Lesson 35.

## PARTICIPLES.

## Active.

1. 2. 3. 4.

165. Present (R.) ans, ens, ens, iens.

Perfect (none).

Future (root of supine = ρ.) ūrus.

## Passive.

Perfect (ρ.) us.

Future (or 'participle of necessity;' R.).

1. 2. 3. 4.  
andus, endus, endus, iendus.

<sup>m</sup> 29) After a verb of motion, 'to' is never a sign of the dative, but is to be translated by *ad*. But 'ad' is omitted before the names of towns and small islands.

When the place is a town or small island, the place to which is put in the accusative; the place from which, in the ablative.

165\*. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.

The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed, en, t, &c.* (shocked, taken, hurt).

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*: a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by 'about to (write);' or, 'going to (write).'

166. VOCABULARY 31.

R.	r.	p.	
frang,	frēg,	fract	(for fragt).
sparg,	spars,	spars	(for spargs).
adsparg,	adspers,	adspers	(for adspergs).
claud,	claus,	claus	(for clauds).
immerg,	immers,	immers	(for immergs).
rump,	rūp,	rupt.	

Exercise <sup>n</sup> 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded. Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Immersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semīna spargenda. Agricōla sparsūrus semīna. Violatūrus legem. Claudens portas. Porta clausa. Semīna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersūrus.

Lesson 36.

168. VOCABULARY 32.

(Words that are construed like *proper names* of towns. 72, note s.)

On the ground,	hūmi.
At home,	dōmi, fem.

<sup>n</sup> First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *cing* (159, 160), and to *frag* (see 105, 159, and 160); (2) by adding *s* to *merg, sparg, claud* (see 159); and (3) from the roots of *viol-āre, habit-āre* (by 159).

At my house,	dōmi meā (At his own house, <i>domi suā</i> ).
On service; in the field,	militiā.
Home (to or towards } home),	dōmum (after verbs of <i>motion</i> ).
From home,	dōmo.
In the country,	rūri, <i>abl.</i> (or, <i>rure</i> ).
Into the country,	rūs ( <i>neut. acc.</i> ).
From the country,	rūre.

Both ° (adv.), et; properly *and*.  
 Neither, neque, or nec, } *neque* is rather to be *pre-*  
 Nor, neque, or nec, } *ferred* before a vowel.  
 To sing, can-ēre (r. cecin; p. cant).

169. (Eng.) Cæsar *having conquered* his enemies, &c.  
 (Lat.) Cæsar, *when he had conquered* his enemies, &c.  
 (or) Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, &c.  
 (a) Cæsar, *quum vicisset* hostes, &c.  
 (b) (or) Cæsar, *victis hostibus*, &c.

170. A substantive and participle are said to be put *absolutely*, when they are not *governed* by the *verb*, or any other word in the sentence.

☞ In Latin, words *put absolutely* are in the *ablative*.

(This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

171. OBS. ☞ The want of a participle in Latin for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense.

### Exercise 36.

172. Balbus *having crowned*<sup>p</sup> the boy's head with a garland, went away. The slave *having shut*<sup>q</sup> the gate of the city, is going to bed<sup>11</sup>. Cæsar *having conquered* his enemies (169, b) will return to Rome. The leaves are falling down *on the ground*. Cæsar is remaining at his-own-house. Balbus was with me<sup>r</sup>

° Thus instead of 'both Caius and Balbus,' the Romans said 'and Caius and Balbus' (*et Caius et Balbus*).

<sup>p</sup> Translate by 'when he had crowned.'

<sup>q</sup> Translate by 'the gate of the city being shut.'

<sup>r</sup> Oms. *Cum*, 'with,' is written *after*, and *joined to*, the *ablatives* of the personal pronouns (*mēcum, tēcum, nobiscum*, &c.: not *cum me* nor *me cum*).

both at home and on-service. Balbus had lived *many years* in the country.

(What is *mecum* made up of?)

Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit. Folia nondum decidērant. Puer *Romam* mittendus est. Balbus nec<sup>s</sup> domi nec militiæ *mecum* fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavērit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus *Romam* rediērunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingēret. Sacerdos, *quum* aras sanguine adpersisset, abiit.

[Observe: in construing an *ablative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that used with 'being:' as, *Gallis victis*, the Gauls being conquered.]

But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with 'having') *governing* the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning: as, *Gallis victis*, having conquered the Gauls.]

*Fracto* puēri *brachio*, abit. Alexander, victo Darīo, rediit. Avis, constructo in *summā quercu* nido, canit. *Violātis* patriæ *lēgibus*, vitā<sup>24)</sup> indignus est. *Fundo* in tres partes *divīso*, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adpersâ sanguine arâ, abiit. Caius, ruptis vincūlis, evolavit. *Scriptâ* epistōlâ, abiit.

### Lesson 37.

#### Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the *participle* in *us.*)

<sup>s</sup> In construing two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to borrow a 'not' from them for the verb, and then to construe them by *either*—or instead of *neither*—*nor*. Thus, 'he was with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become 'he was *not* with me *either* yesterday or the day before.'

174. The gerund is translated by the 'participial substantive' in 'ing.'

When that which is in form the participio in *ing*, governs or is governed, but has nothing to agree with, it is the participial substantive.

175. The *gerund* may be considered as a *verbal substantive* of the neuter gender; but we must borrow the infinitive mood for its *nominative*: it has no plural.

N.	(occidēre, <i>killing</i> .)	} The Gerund governs a noun; in the same case, of course, which the verb it comes from governs.
G.	occidendi, <i>of killing</i> .	
D.	occidendo, <i>to or for killing</i> .	
Acc.	{(occidere) . . . . . } <i>killing</i> .	
Abl.	{occidendum, <i>when governed</i> } { <i>by a preposition</i> }	

### 176. VOCABULARY 33.

To feel confident,	confidēre.	
Frugality, economy,	parsimonia	( <i>parsimony</i> ).
Science,	scientia.	
Superfluous; unnecessary,	supervacuus (from <i>super</i> , above; <i>vacuus</i> , empty).	
Expense,	sumpt-us, <i>G. ūs</i>	( <i>sumptuary laws</i> )
Nature,	natūra.	
Desirous,	cupīdus	( <i>cupidity</i> ).
To be different,	discrepare	( <i>discrepancy</i> ).
New,	novus	( <i>novelty</i> ).
Art,	ars, <i>G. artis</i> .	
Skilful (in),	perītus (governs <i>gen.</i> ).	
Horse,	equ us, i	( <i>equerry</i> ).
Character,	mōres, <i>G. morum, pl.</i>	( <i>morals</i> ).
	r.	p.
To see,	vidēre, vid, vis	( <i>visible</i> ).
To discover; show,	de-tēg-ēre, tex, tect	( <i>de-lect</i> ).
To play,	lūd-ēre, lūs, lūs	( <i>de-lude</i> ).
To teach,	doc-ēre, docu, doc	( <i>doctor</i> ).
To tame; master,	dōm-āre, dōmu, domīt	( <i>in-dom-itable</i> ).

177. (*Eng.*) Whilst they are playing.  
(*Lat.*) During playing (*inter ludendum*).

### Exercise 37.

178. Economy is the science of *avoiding* unnecessary expenses. Man is by nature desirous<sup>t</sup> of seeing and hearing new (things). Balbus is skilful *in mas-*

<sup>t</sup> Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, recollection, &c.* (or their opposites) govern the *genitive*.

tering a horse. He is come to master<sup>28)</sup> the horse. The character of boys discovers itself whilst they are playing (177). He learns by teaching. How much pleasure<sup>4</sup> (there) is in learning!

Nonnē potest docendo discēre? Cupīdi sunt docendi. *Sapientis est*<sup>7</sup> supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Discat<sup>30)</sup> puer supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Abeat Romam. Discat, ut docēre possit. *Quantum temporis*<sup>4</sup> ludendo amisērunt! Nemo mortem poterit vitare. Inviti vēnērant, ut Sullæ domum evertērent. Eversā Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt? Puer cupidus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrepat a timendo confidēre.

## Lesson 38.

## Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a *gerund* governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus (*Eng.*) The intention of writing a letter.  
(*Lat.*) *Consilium scribendi epistolam.*  
(or) *Consilium scribendæ<sup>u</sup> epistolæ.*

181. Thus, then, '*epistōla scribenda*' may be declined throughout.

*Sing.*

- N. *Epistōla scribenda, a letter to be written.*  
G. *epistolæ scribendæ, of writing a letter.*  
D. *epistolæ scribendæ, to or for writing a letter.*  
Acc. (ad) *epistolam scribendam, to write a letter (or for writing a letter).*  
Abl. *epistolâ scribendâ, by writing a letter.*

*Plur.*

- N. *epistolæ scribendæ, letters to be written.*  
G. *epistolârum scribendarum, of writing letters.*

<sup>u</sup> The real meaning of '*consilium epistolæ scribendæ*' is, 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'



- D. epistōlis scribendis, *to or for writing letters.*  
 Aec. (ad) epistōlas scribendas, *to write letters (or, for writing letters).*  
 Abl. epistōlis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

## 182. VOCABULARY 34.

[The forms following the verbs in this and the following vocabulary are r. and ρ.]

Book,	liber, libri	(library).
Very fond,	studiōsus	(studious).
Plato,	Plato, G. Platōnis.	
To retain,	{re-tīn-ēre, rētīnu, retent (re, back : tenēre, to hold)}	(retentive).
Barbarous,	barbārus.	
Custom,	consuetūd-o, G. īnis. Gender?	
To sacrifice v,	im-mōlare	(immolate).
Fonder,	cupidi-or, G. ōris.	
To buy,	ēm-ērc, ēm, empt	(preemption).
To snatch; seize w,	{arrīpēre, arripu, arrept (ad, to; rapere, to snatch).	
Opportunity,	oceasi-o, G. ōnis. Gender?	(occasion).
To practise,	exercēre	(exercise).
Desire,	cupidit-as, ātis	(cupidity).
To rule,	rēgēre, rex, rect	(di-rect).
War,	bellum	(bellicose).
To carry on; wage,	gērēre, gess, gest.	
Time,	tempūs, ōris. Gender?	(temporal).

## Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond of writing letters. Demosthēnes was very-fond of hearing Plato. In the times of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom of sacrificing men. Seize every opportunity of practising virtue. Do not lose the opportunities of practising virtue. Nature has given us a desire of seeing the truth. The Romans were fond of waging war. Timotheus was skilful<sup>39)</sup> in governing a state.

[Obs. Any case of the *partic. in dus*, except the nominative, must be construed by the same case of the *participial substantive*; and the substantive with which it agrees must stand as the accusative after *it*.]

v Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola salsa*) on the victim's head:' from *in*, *on*, and *mōla*.

w This verb, though of the third, follows the *fourth* in the *imperfect*, &c. as will be explained below. See note x, p. 61.

Nonnē fundum *ingenti pecuniā*<sup>21)</sup> cōmērat? Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendę virtūtis* arripiebat. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum*, quam *legendōrum*. Caesar belli gerendi peritus fuit. Nonnē mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) detēgunt?

## Lesson 39.

184. OBS. After 'is,' 'are,' and the other parts of the verb 'to be,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used in Latin as a participle of the future passive, to signify *duty, necessity, &c.*

185. Hence what is in English expressed by the *passive infinitive* is to be translated in Latin by the *participle in dus*, when it follows 'is,' 'are,' &c.

186. Virtus colenda est.  
Virtue to-be-cultivated is.  
[Virtue is to be cultivated.]

☞ The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dus*; with other words it is generally governed in the *ablative* by *a* or *ab*.

## 187. VOCABULARY 35.

By accident,	casu; <i>abl. of casus</i>	( <i>casual</i> ).
Some,	nonnulli, æ, a (non, <i>not</i> ; nullus, <i>none</i> ).	
To sharpen,	acuere, acu, acut	( <i>acute</i> ).
Unprofitable,	inutilis (in, <i>not</i> ; utilis, <i>useful</i> ).	
A game,	lusus, <i>G. ūs</i> .	
Inclined,	propensus	( <i>propensity</i> ).
To understand,	intelligere, intellex, intellect	( <i>intelligence</i> ).
To do; act,	agere, eg, act	( <i>agent</i> ).
Born,	natus	( <i>innate</i> ).
To undertake,	{ suscipere x, suscep, suscept (sub, under; capere, to take).	
To impel,	impellere, impul, impuls	( <i>impulse</i> ).
	Not only — but also.	
	Non solum — verum etiam.	
To spend (time, &c.),	{ impendere, impend, impens (followed by <i>dat. of participle in dus</i> ).	

x Some verbs of the *third* have the terminations of the *fourth* (in the parts hitherto given), except in the *imperfect subjunctive*, the *infinitive* and the *imperative*. Thus *arripere* has *arripiebat*, *arripiet*, *arripiat*, *arripiens*, *arripiendus*.

188. *Ne Balbus quidem.*  
Not *Balbus* even (not even *Balbus*).  
*Ne patrem quidem amat.*  
Not *his father* even *does he love!*

Obs. 'Not' with 'even' (*quidem*), in the sentence, must be translated by *nē*; and *quidem* must follow the word to which the *even* belongs; the *nē* being put before that word.

### Exercise 39.

189. Every opportunity of practising virtue<sup>14</sup> is to be seized<sup>x</sup>. *Even* Caius did not seize every opportunity of practising virtue. The gate is to be shut in the evening<sup>12)</sup>. *Balbus* having flown<sup>35)</sup> to the country<sup>37)</sup> from the town, bought an estate for an immense sum-of-money. The boys are fonder of playing than of learning. *How much time*<sup>4</sup> do they spend in reading books<sup>11</sup>? Let him buy the estate for a large sum-of-money.

[Obs. After *ad*, the *gerund* or *part. in dus* may be construed by the *infinitive*: *as*, *ad discendum*, *to learn*.

*Nemo est casu bonus: discenda est virtus. Sunt nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingeniis non inutiles lusus. Non solum ad discendum propensi sunt, verum etiam ad docendum. Homo ad intelligendum et agendum natus est. Multa nos ad suscipiendum discendi laborem impellunt. Multa impellunt Caium, ut discendi laborem suscipiat*<sup>x</sup>. *Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detexerant. Omnem dicendi*<sup>\*</sup> *elegantiam augēbit legendis oratoribus et poetis.*

### Lesson 40.

#### *Verbs followed by the dative.*

190. Some verbs are followed by the *dative*, where we use no preposition, and where we should therefore be led by the English to put an *accusative*.
191. A *dative* put—remember pray—  
After *envy*, *spare*, *obey*,

<sup>x</sup> See note, p. 61.

<sup>\*</sup> In speaking.

*Persuade, believe, command; to these*  
 Add *pardon, succour, and displeas,*  
 With *vacāre, 'to have leisure,'*  
 And *placēre, 'to give pleasure:'*  
 With *nubēre* (of the *female* said),  
 The English of it is '*to wed:'*'  
*Servire* add, and add *studēre,*  
*Heal, favour, hurt, resis, and indulgēre.*

192. VOCABULARY 36.

Good for; useful,	utilis	(utility).
Fit for,	idōneus: governs <i>dative</i> .	
To envy,	{ invidēre, invid, invis (in, into; } vidēre, to see)	(invidious).
To spare,	parcēre, pēperc.	
To obey,	pārere.	
To believe,	crēdere, credid, credit	(credible).
To pardon,	{ signoscere, ignov (in, not: noscere, to know).	
To succour,	{ succurrere y, succurr, succurs (sub, under; currere, to run). subvenire y, subven, subvent (sub, under; venire, to come).	
To please,	placere.	
To displease,	displicere.	
To have leisure for,	vacare.	
To marry (properly 'to veil'),	nubere, nups, nupt	(nuptials).
To command,	imperare	(imperious).
To persuade,	{ persuadere, persuas (per, thoroughly; suadere, to advise).	
To think, consider,	putare	(to impute).

Exercise 40.

193. How do you translate *not only—but also?* (187.)

194. *It is the duty of a Christian to envy nobody.*  
 Do not envy the good. It is pleasant to succour the  
 miserable. Atticus pleased me. Nobody will believe  
 the wicked. Death spares nobody. They had spared  
 the gate of the city. Portia will marry Caius. Dru-  
 silla married Caius *in the autumn.* He spares himself

y Of these, *succurrere*, 'to run to support,' is stronger than *sub-  
venire*, 'to come to support.'

in the winter. He does not spare even himself. He spares *not only* himself, *but also* his slave. You will never have persuaded me. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

195. Obs. *Est, sunt* may be construed 'must,' 'ought,' or 'should,' when they have a participle in *dus* with them; the part. in *dus* being translated into English by the *infin. passive*.

Cæsar legendo libro vacābit. Christiāni est patriæ suæ legibus parēre. Ignosce mihi. Nemo tibi credit. Improbū patriæ legibus non parēbit. Num legibus parēbunt improbi, violatā fide? Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

---

Lesson 41.

196. The most common terminations of the persons in the active voice are:—

<i>Sing.</i>				<i>Plur.</i>		
1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.
m,	s,	t.		mus,	tis,	nt.

197. By changing *t* into these terminations, we may get all the persons of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, and of *all the subjunctive*<sup>z</sup>.

198. But observe the vowel before *mus, tis* is long in these tenses, except in the *perf. subjunctive*, in which it is common<sup>a</sup>.

199. VOCABULARY 37.

[Verbs governing the *dative* continued.]

To be the slave of (to),	servire, servi (or serviv), servit (to serve).	
To devote oneself to; aim at,	studēre	(study).
To hurt, injure,	nōcēre	(nocuous).

<sup>z</sup> Refer to the table in the Appendix, p. 116.

<sup>a</sup> That is, *long* or *short*. The old grammarians made it short in the *perf.*, *long* in the *fut. perfect*.

To resist,	resistere, restit.
To favour,	favere, fav, faut.
To indulge; humour,	indulgere, indul.
Assistance,	adjumentum.

## Exercise 41. [See question 28, p. 131.]

200. I would have favoured Caius. You would have resisted anger. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. We would have indulged the desire. I was hurting myself. You were hurting me. You were flaying the sheep, not shearing (them). Come to shut the gates of the city. Was he come, to shut the gates of the city? You had hurt Caius. You had been-the-slave-of passion. Do not be-the-slave-of passion. You were come to surround the girl's head with a crown. He had displeased Caius. You were sparing the enemies.

[What is the imperative of *vēnīre*? What tense is used as an imperative? (The subj. present.)]

Violābas legem. Barbāram consuetudinem immo-landōrum homīnum retinuissētis. Irā multos annos serviēras. Ne violētis fidem. Portas urbis ne claudātis. Vēni, ut mihi succurras. Regendis anīmi cupiditatibus studeāmus. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad obtinendam sapientiam. Tondendæ sunt oves, non deglubendæ. Nonnē claudendæ sunt urbis portæ? Exercenda est virtus.

## Lesson 42.

201. 'Is,' properly 'that,' is used for *he, she, it*, plur. *they*<sup>b</sup>, when they do not mean the *same person* or *thing* that the nominative case means.

202. 'Is' has neuter *id*.  
The other cases are formed as if from 'eus, ea, eum,' making the gen. *eius*, written *ejus*, and dat. *ei*.

<sup>b</sup> *Is*, 'that person' = *he*.  
*Ea*, 'that female' = *she*, &c.

But in the plural, the *nom. masc.* and the *dative* are generally *ii*, and *iis*, instead of *eis* <sup>c</sup>.

## 203. VOCABULARY 38.

Long,	diu. Longer, <i>diutius</i> .	
To recal,	revocare	(to revoke).
Literature,	lit̄eræ (plur.).	
So,	tam.	
So great,	tantus.	
Multitude,	multitūd-o, <i>G. inis</i> .	
To count,	nūmērāre	(numeration).
To increase,	augēre, r. aux, <i>p. auct</i>	(augment).

204. Si diutius vixisset, neminem habuisset  
*If longer he had lived, nobody he would have had*  
 parem.  
*equal.*  
*(If he had lived longer, he would have had no*  
*equal.)*

205. OBS. ¶ After 'if' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

## Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given me <sup>22)</sup><sup>b</sup> an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be alive <sup>d</sup>. *So-great* is the multitude of the stars, that <sup>31)</sup> you cannot count them. I would have pardoned you, if you had done that. They were aiming at recalling the kings <sup>42)</sup>.

<sup>c</sup> Hence the cases are,

Is, ea, id : *G. ejus* : *D. ei* : *Acc. eum, eam, id* : *Abl. eo, eā, eo*.

*Plur. ii, eā, eā* : *G. eorum, earum, eorum* : *D. and Abl. iis* (or *eis*) : *Acc. eos, eas, eā*.

OBS. When *his, her, its*; *theirs*, are to be translated by 'is,' they are translated by the genitive.

When *his, her, its*; *theirs*, are translated by *suis, suis* must agree with its substantive.

*Ejus libri, his books*; *eorum libri, their books*; *sui libri, his or their books*.

<sup>d</sup> Translate as if it were 'they would live.'


[65] When the pluperf. subjunctive has *si*, it must be translated by 'had,' not by 'would have.']

Peccavissent, si id fecissent. Pareat animus, non impēret<sup>e</sup>. Nonnē Caius scribendæ epistolæ vācavit? Patriam auro, si potuisses, vendidisses. Nonnē mores puerōrum se *inter ludendum* detēgunt? Malus pastor deglupsisset oves, non totondisset. Si oratōres et poētas legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi.

Lesson 43.

207. *Sing.* Mihi<sup>f</sup> scribendum est, *I must or should write.*  
 Tibi scribendum est, *you must or should write.*  
 Illi scribendum est, *he must or should write.*  
*Plur.* Nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write.*  
 Vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write.*  
 Illis scribendum est, *they must or should write.*

208. (*Eng.*) I *must* (or *should*) write.  
 (*Lat.*) It is *to-be-written* by me.

209.  After the part. in *dus*, the person by whom is put in the dative.

- (a) If *we* or *you* in English means 'every body,' or 'people in general,' the pronoun is left out in Latin.  
 (b) Hence 'edendum est' is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'we should eat,} \\ \text{or 'you should eat.'} \end{array} \right.$   
 (c) The dative is also left out, whenever the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

Exercise 43<sup>g</sup>.

210. Caius must not sleep. (We) must remain at Rome the whole winter<sup>12</sup>). We must live well. We must dwell in the country. We must remain at home. We must fly from the city (into) the country<sup>37</sup>).

<sup>e</sup> The auxiliary verb is omitted with the second of two verbs. Not, 'let him come, and let him take it;' but, 'let him come and take it.'

<sup>f</sup> Explanation. The real meaning of 'scribendum est mihi' is, 'it is to be-written by me.'

<sup>g</sup> In doing the exercise, remember,

(1.) That the *English nominative* is to be put in the *dative*, if a *particular person* (or persons) is meant; but *left untranslated*, if what is said holds good of *people in general*.

(2.) The *participle* in *dus* is to be formed from the verb, and written down in the *neuter gender* with *est*.



The wicked *think little of*<sup>3</sup> virtue. Does not the avaricious man *value money very highly*<sup>2</sup>? Will a Christian fear death? [No.]

Evolandum est ex urbe. Manendum est Romæ. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. Quiescendum est, ut vitam conservemus. Ambulandum est per urbem. Laborandum est, ut discas. Discrepat a ludendo laborare. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? Num semper ludendum est? Epistola suâ manu scribenda est. Crabrões non sunt irritandi. Crabrõnem ne irrites. Irritasne crabrõnem?

## Lesson 44.

211. The third persons of the *pres.* and *imperf. subj.* of *esse* (to be) are *sit, esset*, from which the other persons may be formed by 196.

212. Pres. sim, sis, sit, | simus, sītis, sint.  
Imperf. essem, esses, esset, | essēmus, essētis, essent.

213. From these forms those of *posse* may be got, as before explained: 149.

Present subj. possit. [(that) he *may be able.*]

Imperf. subj. posset. [(that) he *might be able.*]

## 214. VOCABULARY 39.

Self,	}	ipse <sup>h</sup> , ipsa, ipsum. G. ipsius, D. ipsi, &c.	
I myself,			
You yourself,			
Itself, &c.	}	pugnāre reetē; <i>adv.</i> from <i>rectus</i> , right.	( <i>pugnacious</i> ).
To fight,			
Rightly; well,			
To hold one's tongue,	}	tacēre	( <i>tacit</i> ).
Even,	}	etiam; placed <i>before</i> the word it belongs to.	
Bad,			
Crop,		sēgēs, segēt-is, f.	
To sow,		sērere, sēv, sāt.	

<sup>h</sup> 'Ipse' is declined throughout as if it were *ipsus*, making Gen. *ius*. *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, G. *ipsius*, D. *ipsi*, Ace. *ipsum, ipsam, ipsum*, &c. It must be construed as 'I myself' when the verb is of the first person; 'you yourself,' when the verb is of the second person.

But ~~as~~ it is better sometimes to place the 'myself,' 'yourself,' after the verb and its *accusative*, &c. 'I was breaking the law myself.'

Exercise 44.

215. The unlearned must labour, that they may learn. Is it *the business*<sup>7</sup> of a shepherd to scatter seeds? [No.] The boy must rest, that he may-be-able to play. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. Boys must hold-their-tongues. The girls must walk through the city. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price.

Impröbis<sup>i</sup> metuendum est. Discendum est<sup>k</sup>, ut possis docere. Edendum est, ut possimus vivere. Tacendum est. Etiam post malam segëtem serendum est. Nonne cam legem ipse violābas? Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniā emēras? Nonne Christianōrum est miseris succurrere? Scriptā epistolā, legit.

Lesson 45.

216. If the verb governs *the dative* (191), 'we' or 'you' should be untranslated<sup>1</sup>:

Credendum est Caio.

We should believe Caius. (Not, 'Caius should believe.')

217. VOCABULARY 40.

Sea-water; salt-water,	aqua marina.
To invent,	in-vēnīre, vēm, vent.
Lust,	{ lubid-o, G. inis. Gender? or libido
	(libidinous).

<sup>i</sup> (a) To read off such sentences *at sight*, take the *dative* as the nominative to 'should' or 'must,' and add the verb unaltered:

Omnibus, *all men*, moriendum est, *must die*.

(b) If *no dative* is expressed, put 'we' or 'you' for the nominative before 'must.'

<sup>k</sup> If the next verb is of the *second person*, put *you* for the nom. of *must*.

<sup>l</sup> If it be necessary to express the *agent* (the person *who is to do the action*), it must be either expressed by the preposition *a* (or *ab*); or the form of the expression must be altered. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* expressed the agent.

70 Participle in 'dus,' of Verbs governing Dative.

Old man,	sēnex, G. sēnīs, G. plur. <i>senum</i>	(senility).
Ignorant,	ignārus. (See 178, t.)	
To abstain (from),	abstinēre (abl.)	(abstinence).
Dishonourable,	inhonestus, a, um	(dishonest).
Phœnicians,	Phœnic-es, um.	

Exercise 45.

218. We should spare the conquered. We should injure nobody. We should resist anger. Should we not resist anger? We should envy nobody. We should obey the laws of our country. We should succour the miserable. We must not spare even Balbus. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. We must not believe even Cæsar himself †. We must injure neither the good nor the bad. Having written his letter (169, b), he will go a-hunting. He has flown into the country<sup>37)</sup> to go<sup>38)</sup> a-hunting. We must go to Rome. We must fly out of the country into the city.

Aqua marīna inutilis est bibendo. Nonne resistendum est<sup>n</sup> iræ? Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. Artem scribendi Phœnīces invēnērunt. Semper pugnandum est contra cupiditātes et lubidīnem. Etiam senībus discendum est. Inutiles sunt libri ignāro legendi. Num puēri regendæ civitatīs peritī esse possunt? Abstinendum est inhonestis voluptatibus. Nonne resistendum est animo? Num credendum est imprōbis?

† Ne Cæsāri quidem ipsi, which must *begin* the sentence.

<sup>n</sup> When there is only *one dative* to a verb which *governs the dative*, supply 'we' as the nominative to 'must,' 'should,' and put the dative (of course, without a preposition) after the verb.

Lesson \* 46.

219. If the Latin verb is a *transitive verb* governing the accusative (8), we must not *govern* this accusative by the neuter participle; but the *acc.* must be made the *nominative*, and the participle in *dus* put in agreement with it:

We must cultivate virtue, { *Colenda est virtus.*  
 { *Not, colendum est virtutem.*

220. To determine whether you should put the *part. in dus* in the neut. *governing* the noun, or *in agreement* with the nominative of that noun, ask yourself two questions:

(1) Can I turn the sentence into the form '*Virtue is to-be-loved*?'

(2) If you *can*, ask yourself whether the verb is one of those which govern the dative (191).

(If the verb governs the *dat.*, the *dative* must be retained, and the *participle in dus* put in the *neuter*. The *dative*, that is, *must not* become the nominative to the verb.)

221. ☞ 'Of,' after 'rob,' 'defraud,' 'deprive,'  
 Is but a sign of *ablative*†.

\* The *present* and *fut. perfect* have their first pers. sing. in *o*.  
 The *fut.* has its *first sing.* in *o* in the *two first* conjugations:

Present, o,	ās,	āt,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
eo,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
o,	īs,	īt,	īmus,	ītis,	unt.
io,	īs,	īt,	īmus,	ītis,	iuunt.
Future, ābo,	ābis,	ābit,	ābīmus,	ābitis,	ābunt.
ēbo,	ēbis,	ēbit,	ēbīmus,	ēbitis,	ēbunt.
am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
iam,	iēs,	iēt,	iēmus,	iētis,	ient.
Future Perf. (r),	ēro,	ēris,	ērit,	{ ēritis, or } { ēritis, or }	ērint.

† If you answer '*No*' to this question, you need not ask yourself the second, except for the purpose of determining *what case* is to be used after the verb.

‡ Thus, '*we must spare our enemies.*'

(1.) Can we say, '*cur enemies are to-be-spared?*' *Ans.* Yes.

(2.) Does '*to spare*' govern the dative in Latin? *Ans.* Yes.

We must therefore *not* say '*inimici parcendi sunt,*' but (leaving to *parcere* the dative it requires) say, '*parcendum est inimicis.*'

† That is, '*of*' is not to be translated, but to serve as a *sign* or *hint* that the following noun is to be in the *ablative*.

## 222. VOCABULARY 41.

To rob,	spoliāre	(spoliation).
To defraud,	fraudāre	(fraud).
To deprive,	privāre	(privation).
To deceive,	decipĕre <sup>s</sup> , decēp, decept	(deception).
To remove (for the purpose of settling elsewhere),	migrāre	(emigrant).
Because,	quā.	
Eye,	ocūlus, i	(oculist).
Apollo,	{ Apoll-o, īnis (son of Jupiter and Latōna; the heathen god of archery, prophecy, and music).	
Hunger,	fam-es, G. is	(famished).
Temple,	templum.	
Grain,	grānum.	
One,	ūnus, G. unīus, &c.	(unit).
Poor,	paupĕr, G. paupĕris	(pauper).
Judge,	jūdex, jūdicis	(judicial).
Before, preposition,	ante (governing ace.).	
Before (before that), conjunction*,	{ antĕquam, priusquam.	
Before, adverb,	antea.	
So,	adeo.	
Hitherto, yet,	adhuc.	
Strong,	robustus, a, um	(robust).
Soldier,	mil-es, G. itis	(militant).
Contest,	certam-en, G. inis, neut.	

OBS. In *antĕquam*, *priusquam*, the words are often separated by other words intervening: *ante—quam*.

*Exercise 46.*

[The *pres. subj.* is used as an *imperative*.]

223. We should favour the good. We should believe Caius, because he has never deceived us. We must surround the boy's head with a crown. We must shut the gate of the city *in the evening*. Do not defraud (*plur.*) me of my praise. Do not deprive me

<sup>s</sup> From *de*, from; *capĕre*, to take: this verb is one of those which prefix an *i* to the termination (that is, take the terminations of the fourth) except in the *present infinitive*, and the two tenses which we have shown how to get from the *present infinitive*; that is, the *imperf. subjunctive* and the *imperative*. See 187, note *x*. In the *pres. indic.* they follow the *fourth*, but have *i* short (*io, is, it, imus, itis, iunt*). See 22, p. 120.

\* Or *conjunctive adverb*; standing *first* in its sentence, and connecting it with another sentence.

of my eyes. Having written his letter (169, a), he went to bed. Do not the wicked deprive virtue herself of her praise? You are depriving (*pl.*) me of my praise. Will you break the laws of your country? Virtue must be cultivated, that you may live well and happily. (Translate as if it were, may-be-able to live.)

[When, 'ante' or 'prius' is in one sentence, and the next begins with 'quam,' take no notice of the word till you get to *quam*, and translate *ante-quam*, *prius-quam* by 'before.']

Non est ante edendum, quam fames impērat. Apollinis templum omni argento spoliāvit. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. Ne me luce privētis. Oculisne me, iudices, privabītis? Ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt paupēres. Athēnis habitandum est, ut discāmus recte vivēre. Romam migrandum est, ut discātis civitātem regere. Etiam post malam segētem serēmus. Leges patriæ violātis. Violātis patriæ legibus (169), meā me laude spoliātis. Num meā me laude spoliabītis? Dicendi elegantia legendis oratoribus et pōētis augenda est.

Lesson 47.

224.

Infinitive Mood.

		1.	2.	3.	4.	
Pres. }	(R.) (107*)	ārē	ērē	ērē	irē	(Active)
Imp. }		ārī	ērī	ī	irī	(Passive)
Perf. }	(r.)	issē	.	.	.	(Active)
Plup. }		past partic. with <i>esse</i> 'to be' (Passive).				

(a) The future infinitive active is made up, as in English, of 'to be,' with the future participle active.

In the passive, the future infinitive is made up of the supine with *iri*.

(b) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre*, *am-av-isse*; *amatūrum esse*, *amātum esse*, and *amātum iri*.

225. ☞ The infinitives made up of two words are called compound infinitives.

☞ The participles of the compound infinitives \* must agree with their substantives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*.

(a) Videt te esse beātum.

*He sees that you are happy.*

(b) Sperat se victūrum esse

*He hopes that he shall live.*

226. Two English sentences joined by the conjunction 'that' are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive*.

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,

(1) Take no notice of 'that';

(2) Translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative*;

(3) Translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the same tense.

#### Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain (*certum est*), that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labours *very highly*<sup>2</sup>. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed to *Athens*<sup>33</sup>, that he may learn to live well. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned to death.

*Certum est, in summis Alpibus tantum esse frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat. Certum est, stellārum tantam esse multitudinē, ut numerāri non possint. Certum est, Balbum patriam auro vendidisse. Certum est, avem in summā quercu nidum constructuram esse. Certum est Cæsarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superaverit.*

\* They are set down in the *acc. masc.*

Lesson 48.

Forms of the Passive. (Tenses from the root of the present.)

229. The third persons of the passive are formed from the third persons of the active by adding *ur* <sup>t</sup>.

(a) But the vowel before the *t* is long, except from *it* (of the *third*), *ābit* and *ēbit*.

230. ☞ The Imperative pass. is like the infinitive active.

231. VOCABULARY 42.

To beg for,	} pētēre <sup>u</sup> , petiv, petit	(petition).
To make for <sup>u</sup> ,		
To pray, pray for,	ōrāre	(oratory).
Ambassador,	} legātus	(the Pope's legate).
Lieutenant <sup>*</sup> ,		
Ship,	nāv-is, is	
To consult,	consūlēre, consūlu, consult.	
Persians,	Pers-æ, arum.	

232. Abit visūrus.

He goes away to see.

(Eng.) He goes to see.

(Lat. sometimes) He goes about-to-see<sup>v</sup> (part. in rus).

t Thus, Indicative,				Passive.				
	1.	2.	3.	4.	1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	at,	et,	it,	it,	ātur,	ētur,	itur,	itur.
Imperfect,	ābat,	ēbat,	ēbat,	iebāt,	ābātur,	ēbātur,	ēbātur,	iebātur
Future,	ābit,	ēbit,	et,	ict,	ābitur,	ēbitur,	etur,	iētur.
Subjunct.								
Present,	et,	eat,	at,	iat,	ētur,	eātur,	atur,	iātur.
Imperfect,	āret,	ēret,	eret,	irct,	āretur,	ēretur,	eretur,	irctur.
				Infinitive,	ari,	eri,	i,	iri.
				Imperative (like <i>Infin. act.</i> )	are,	ere,	ere,	ire.

The third persons plural are formed from the corresponding third persons plural of the active, by adding '*ur*' without any further change.

☞ The third sing. of the imperfect subjunct. may also be got by adding *tur* to the *infin. act.* with its final *e* lengthened.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Inf. pres.,	are,	ērē,	ērē,	irē.
Imp. subj.	ārē-tur,	ērē-tur,	ērē-tur,	irē-tur.

<sup>u</sup> Pētēre expresses the moving towards or aiming at some object; whether the motion is actual motion towards a place, or a movement of the mind towards that for which it *sues*.

\* By '*lieutenant*' is meant the second in command: a lieutenant-general.

Or, '*intending to see*,' which is often the meaning of this participle.



## Exercise 48.

The English *infinitive* expressing the *purpose*, may often be translated by the *future participle*.

233. Ambassadors are sent *to beg* for peace (18, *b*). Ambassadors will be sent, to pray for peace (18, *b*). He goes away to consult (18, *c*) Apollo. The law will be broken. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked both at Rome and at Athens. Let your word be kept. We must remove to Rome, that our faith may be kept. Money must not be valued at a great price. Let the state be ruled by the wise. The Persians make-for their ships.


[Obs. The participle in *rus* may often be translated by the *English infinitive*.]

Cæsar Romam rediit, copias *quam maximas*<sup>9</sup> comparatūrus. Patrem suum consultūrus, abit. Mittantur legātī, pacem petītum. Virtus ab omnibus colātur<sup>30</sup>. Omnis occasio exercendæ virtūtis arripiātur. Certum est, omnem occasionem exercendæ virtūtis a Christiāno arripi. Paupēres ne grano quidem uno fraudulentur. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus et poetis. Abiit dormiturus.

## Lesson 49.

## 234. Relative Pronoun. (Qui, who, which, that.)

Singular.						Plural.			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.	G.	D. Abl.	Acc.
Mas.	Qui,	cujus,	cui,	quem,	quo,	qui,	quōrum,	quibūs,	quos.
Fem.	Quæ,			quam,	quâ,	quæ,	quārum,		quas.
Neut.	Quod,			quod,	quo,	quæ,	quōrum,		quæ.

235.  The *substantive* (or *pronoun*) that the relative *stands for*, is to be looked for in the *sentence before*.

(a) The relative must be put in the same gender, number, and person, as its antecedent<sup>x</sup>.

236. ☞ The case of the relative has nothing to do with the other sentence.

☞ The relative must be governed, as to case, by the verb (or some other governing word) of its own sentence<sup>y</sup>.

☞ *Is, ea, id*, is the regular antecedent pronoun to *qui*.

237. ☞ The verbs which govern the dative in the active, can only be used impersonally<sup>z</sup> in the passive.

Mihi creditur <sup>a</sup> ,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tibi creditur,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illi creditur,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nobis creditur,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vobis creditur,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illis creditur,	<i>They are believed.</i>

238. VOCABULARY 43.

No,	nullus, <i>G.</i> nullius	(null and void).
Animal,	animal <sup>b</sup> , <i>G.</i> animalis.	Gender?
Heart,	cor, <i>G.</i> cordis, n.	(cordial).
Tree,	arbor, <i>G.</i> arbōris, f.	(arbour).
Fruit,	fruct-us, <i>G.</i> ūs	(fructify).
To behold,	adspicere, adspex, adspex	(aspect).

Exercise\* 49.

239. The good are envied. Have you not spared

<sup>x</sup> The *ante-cedent* (that is, *going-before* noun) is the substantive or pronoun for which the relative stands as a representative.

<sup>y</sup> The use of the relative is, to prevent the same substantive from being expressed in each clause.

"The apple which you gave me," instead of "the apple, which apple you gave me." "The mountain on whose top," &c., instead of "the mountain, on the top of which mountain." "The man who did this," &c., instead of "the man, which man did this."

<sup>z</sup> To be used *impersonally*-is, to be used only in the *third person* singular, and without a nominative case.

<sup>a</sup> Hence,

(*Eng.*) *I am pardoned, favoured, persuaded, &c.*

(*Lat.*) *It is pardoned, favoured, persuaded, to me.*

<sup>b</sup> Neuters in *e, al, ar*, make their ablatives in *i*; nom. plur. *ia*; gen. *ium*.

\* The *second person* plural of the imperative may be got by adding

the conquered? He gave me the crown, with which he had surrounded the girl's head. Let anger be resisted, which has been prejudicial to many states. Caius, who sold his country for gold, should be condemned to death. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treachery. Caius, whose mother lives<sup>c</sup> in the country, has himself removed to Rome. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered.

[When a *pass.* verb is one that governs the *dative*, take this *dat.* as if it were the *nom.* to the verb.]

Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. Arborea serit agricola, quarum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Pauperibus, qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniamus. Pareatur victis. Pepercisti victis. Caio ignoscite. Violavistis fidem. Irae resistitur. Nihil facile persuadetur invitis.

### Lesson 50.

240. 'He who,' 'those who,' are generally translated by 'qui' only, instead of by 'is qui,' 'ii qui.'

241. A deponent verb is a verb that has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

242. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles.

☞ The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs have not got.

[(1) Loquens, *speaking*: (2) locutus, *having spoken*: (3) locuturus, *about to speak*: (4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.]

*te* to the second singular; but in the third, *z* must be changed into *z* before this addition is made.

1.	2.	3.	4.
āte,	ēte,	ite,	ite.

The terminations of the perfect are for all the conjugations:

i,	isti,	it		imus,	istis,	erunt.
----	-------	----	--	-------	--------	--------

<sup>c</sup> Dwells, habitat.

## 243. VOCABULARY 44.

To recollect,	reminisci	(reminiscence).
To remember,	recordāri	(record).
To enjoy,	frui	(fruition).
To use,	ūti, ūsus.	
To discharge,	fungi, functus	(function).
To get possession,	potiri, potitus (but pōtītur).	
To pity,	miserēri	(misery).
To forget,	oblivisci, oblitus	(oblivion).
A benefit,	beneficium.	
An injury,	injūria.	
Duty,	officium	(office).
Arms,	arma, G. ōrum.	
Some time or other,	aliquando.	
Eternal,	sempiternus.	
Crime,	flagitium	(flagitious).

244. After to 'pity,' 'remember,' 'forget,'  
A genitive case is properly set d.

245. With 'use,' 'discharge,' 'possession get,' and also with  
'enjoy,'  
An ablative correctly stands: remember this, my boy.

## Exercise 50.

246. *He* who sins *unwillingly*, is free from blame. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. Let us use our arms and horses. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? Is the life, *that* we now enjoy, eternal? Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life.

Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄erum. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. Vincāmus odium, paceque potiāmur. Christiani est injuriārum oblivisci. Beātus est, qui omnibus vitæ officiis fungitur. Elegantiā loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

d But 'remember' and 'forget' often govern the accusative.

*Lesson 51.*

247. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* of the *mas.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*.

[Doctus, doct-ior; sapiens, *G.* sapient-is, sapient-ior; tener, tener-ior<sup>e</sup>; pulcher (pulchr), pulchr-ior<sup>e</sup>.]

248. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(a) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rimus* (*a, um*) to the nominative.

(Pulcher, pulherrimus.)

249. *Similis* (*like*), *facilis* (*easy*), and a few more in *lis*, make the superlative in *limus*.

(Simillimus, faeillimus.)

250. The following are quite irregular:—

Bonus (*good*), melior, optimus. | magnus (*great*), major, maximus.  
Malus (*bad*), pejor, pessimus. | parvus (*little*), minor, minimus.

## 251. VOCABULARY 45.

Air,	aër, <i>G.</i> aëris, <i>m.</i>	
Light,	lëvis	( <i>levity</i> ).
Heavy,	grävis	( <i>gravity</i> ).
It is well known	} eonstat <sup>f</sup> .	
It is allowed,		
It is better,	præstat ( <i>præ, before: stat, it stands</i> ).	
Sound,	sonus, <i>G.</i> i.	
Swift,	vël-ox, <i>G.</i> ôeis	( <i>velocity</i> ).
Slow,	tardus	( <i>tardy</i> ).
Summer,	æst-as, <i>G.</i> ätis.	
Dog,	cänis	( <i>canine</i> ).
Wolf,	lÿpus, <i>G.</i> i.	
The moon,	lÿna.	
Nearer,	propior ( <i>with dat.</i> ).	
Excellent,	præstan-s, <i>G.</i> tis.	
Strength,	röbÿr, <i>G.</i> robÿr-is. <i>Gender?</i>	
Ignorance,	ignoratio.	

<sup>e</sup> Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root; the preceding *e* being often dropt.

<sup>f</sup> Con, *together; stat, it stands: 'it stands together' as a consistent truth.*

Knowledge,	sciētia	(science).
To speak,	lōqui, lōcūtus	(e-location).
Simple,	simplex, G. simplic-is.	
Wealth,	ōpes, G. opum, plur.	

252. (a) Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.  
*Europe less is than Asia.*

(b) Nihil est clementiâ divinius.  
*Nothing is than clemency more godlike.*  
*(Nothing is more godlike than clemency.)*

253. ☞ 'Than,' after a comparative, is (252, a) either translated by *quam*, or omitted (252, b), the following noun being put in the *ablative*.

(a) If '*quam*' is expressed, the following noun will, of course, be in the *same case* as that to which '*quam*' joins it.

*Exercise 51.*

254. (*Quam* expressed.) Air is lighter than water. It is well known that light is swifter than sound.

(*Quam* omitted.) In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Silver is lighter than gold. Is not silver lighter than gold? Is it not well known, that sound is slower than light? Is not a dog very-like a wolf?

Aurum gravius est argento. Luna terræ propior est, quam sol. Constat sonum luce tardiorem esse. Virtus præstantior est robore. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est, quam scientia. Majus est prodesse omnibus, quam opes magnas habere. Certum est solem majorem esse quam terram. Sæpe facere præstat quam loqui. Simplex cibus puëris utilissimus est.

## Lesson 52.

## 255. VOCABULARY 46.

[Prepositions governing the accusative.]

Ad,	to.
Adversus,	against, towards. ( <i>See erga.</i> )
Ante,	before.
Apud,	{ at: before a plural name of persons, amongst. Apud me, 'with me;' that is, 'at my house:' apud Romanos, 'amongst the Romans.'
Circa,	about (of <i>time</i> and <i>place</i> ).
Circum,	about (of <i>place</i> only).
Cis, citra,	on this side of.
Contra,	against: over-against.
Erga,	{ towards (not of <i>motion</i> ; but after words expressing a kind <i>feeling</i> , a <i>duty</i> , &c.).
Extra,	{ without (in the sense of <i>not within</i> ), out of; beyond.
Infra,	beneath.
Inter,	{ amongst (inter se, 'to each other &'), be- tween.
Intra	within.
To have,	habēre.
To observe ( <i>duties</i> ),	conservāre ( <i>conservative</i> ).
To move ( <i>transitive</i> ),	mōvēre, mōv, mōt.
To move ( <i>intransitive</i> ),	mōvēri, mōtus: properly 'to be moved.'
Saturn,	{ Sātūrnus, father of Jupiter, by whom he was dethroned. He devoured his own children.
Jupiter,	{ Jūpīter <sup>h</sup> , Gen. Jovis (and then formed regularly from <i>Jov</i> ), the king of the heathen gods.
Arms,	arm-a, G. orum.
The sea,	mar-e, G. is, neut. ( <i>maritime</i> ).
Surface,	superfici-es, G. ei ( <i>superficial</i> ).
The moon,	luna ( <i>lunar</i> ).
Dutiful-affection,	piēt-ās, G. ātis.
The Rhine,	Rhēn-us, i.
To expire,	expirare.

256. Maris superficies major est, quam  
The sea's surface greater is than (that<sup>i</sup>)  
terræ.

of the earth (257).

257. When the same noun would be expressed in

g After contrarius, *contrary*, &c.

h Jupiter and Saturn are also two of the planets.

i Here 'that' stands for 'the surface.'

both clauses, it is left out in that which follows *quam* (*than*).

- a) In English it is represented in the second clause by 'that,' 'those.' Hence,  
 (b) ~~☞~~ 'That,' 'those,' after 'than,' are to be untranslated.

Exercise 52.

258. (Our) duties towards (our) parents are to be observed. Do many come to old age? We must fight against the evils of old age. *It is an allowed fact*, that the earth moves round the sun. Your benefits are greater than *those* of your brother. Is not simple food very good for boys? Let us be gentle towards the conquered. The star of Jupiter is nearer the earth than that of Saturn.

Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. Nulla habēmus arma contra mortem. Patrium habet adversus bonos viros animum. Luna circum terram movētur. Nulla est firma amicitia inter malos. Piētās erga patriam conservanda est. Jovis stella infra Saturnum est. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. Pisces extra aquam cito expirant. Intra muros habitābat. Inter se (p. 82, g) contraria \* sunt beneficium et injuria.

Lesson 53.

259. 'May' and 'might' (when they stand in a *principal* sentence) are translated by *licet*, 'it is allowed.'

260. *May*, licet (= *it is allowed*).  
*Might*, licuit (= *it was allowed*).

261. Mihi ire licet,	<i>I may go.</i>
Tibi ire licet,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illi ire licet,	<i>He may go.</i>
Nobis ire licet,	<i>We may go.</i>
Vobis ire licet,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illis ire licet,	<i>They may go.</i>

\* When an adjective agrees with two nouns it is in the plural; here, as they are the names of *things*, it is in the *neuter* gender.



84 'May' and 'might': Interrogative Sentences.

262. Mihi ire licuit,  
Tibi ire licuit,  
&c. &c.

*I might have gone.*  
*You might have gone.*

Non licet homini servire gloria, { *A man may not be the*  
*slave-of (to) glory.*

263. ☞ The present infinitive follows 'licuit,' in spite of 'have.'

264. (Eng.) I may go.

(Lat.) *it is allowed me to go.*

(Eng.) I might have gone.

{ (Lat.) *it was allowed me (then)*  
*to go.*

265. VOCABULARY 47.

[Prepositions governing the accusative, continued.]

Juxta,	close to; by	(juxtaposition).
Ob,	on account of (ob oculos, before	one's eyes).
Pōnēs,	in the power of.	
Per,	through; by means of	(perforation).
Pōnē,	behind.	
Post,	after	(postpone).
Præter,	besides, beyond	(præterperfect).
Prope,	near.	
Propter,	near; on account of.	
Secundum,	along; according to.	
Supra;	above.	
Trans,	across, beyond; on the other side of	(transfigure).
Ultrā,	beyond.	(ultramontane).
Usque,	as far as (properly an adverb, used with ad).	

Fear, mētus, G. metūs.

Shore, litūs, ōr-is. Gender?

A camp, castr-a, ōrum, plur.

To place, pōnēre, pōsū, pōsīt

(position).

Journey; way, itēr, G. itinēr-is, neut.

(itinerant).

266. He 'threatens me with death,' should be  
In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'  
(Mihi mortem minātur.)

Exercise 53.

[☞ When the answer 'yes' cannot possibly be expected, 'an' should be used rather than 'num' (153) for the interrogative adverb.]

267. A man may not be-the-slave-of glory. A Christian may not be-the-slave-of pleasure. May Christians be-the-slaves-of pleasure? We must not be-the-slaves-of anger. Might he not have dwelt at Rome? No one may break the laws of his country. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. We must

remove across the Rhine, that we may learn to devote-ourselves-to literature.

Servi parent propter metum ; boni propter officium. Navigatio juxta litus sæpe est periculōsa. Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. Supra nos cælum conspici-mus ; infra nos terram. Longum iter est per præcepta ; breve<sup>k</sup> et effi-cax per exempla. Secundum leges vivendum est. Condita Massilia est prope ostia Rhodāni amnis. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie immīnet. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitare ? Janus<sup>1</sup> bis post Numæ<sup>m</sup> regnum clausus fuit. Nonne mortem tibi minabātur ? Imperium populōrum est penes magistratus.

---

#### Lesson 54.

(On the translation of ought.)

268. 'Ought' is translated by the *impersonal* verb 'oportet,' 'it behooves.'

269. Me ire oportet,     *I ought to go.*  
Te ire oportet,     *You ought to go.*  
          &c.

Me ire oportuit,     *I ought to have gone.*  
Te ire oportuit,     *You ought to have gone.*  
          &c.

270. Obs. When the *infn. perfect* follows 'ought,' *ought* is to be translated by *oportuit*, and the *perfect infinitive* translated by the *present infinitive*.

271. So too after 'could,' the *perfect infinitive* (which will be without 'to') will be translated by the *present infinitive*.  
[Facere potuit, he could have done (it).]

---

<sup>k</sup> Of two connected sentences one must borrow its *nominative case* and *verb* from the other. Thus the second will become, breve et effi-cax est iter, &c.

<sup>1</sup> Janus was a heathen god, represented with *two faces*, one looking each way : his temple at Rome was *shut* in time of peace.

<sup>m</sup> Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

272. Cārere *lack* or *am without*,  
 And egeo, *require*  
 Or *need*, do both, without a doubt,  
 An ablative desire.  
 (a) But egeo *sometimes*, and indigeo *often*, takes the genitive.

## 273. VOCABULARY 48.

[Prepositions governing the ablative.]

A, ab, abs <sup>n</sup> ,	from; by (before the <i>doer</i> of the action).
Absquē <sup>o</sup> ,	without.
Clam,	without the knowledge of.
Coram,	before; in the presence of.
Cum,	with.
Dē,	concerning; about ( <i>of</i> , when it means <i>about</i> ).
E, ex P,	out of; from.
Præ,	before; in comparison with ( <i>prefer</i> ).
Prō,	for.
Sinē,	without. ( <i>since</i> ure).
Tenus,	{ as far as (which follows its noun, and in the plural may govern the genitive).

To die,	{ mōri, mortuus ( <i>moribund</i> ) (with terminations of the fourth, except in <i>present</i> [where it has them in <i>first sing.</i> and <i>third plur.</i> ] <i>infinitive</i> , <i>imperative</i> , and <i>imperf. subjunctive</i> ).
---------	--

## Exercise 54.

274. Ought we not to succour the miserable? Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? Ought not Balbus to have kept his word? Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? I have received many letters from you. The bird has flown away from my hands. He is gone away (Perf. Act. 161) *without his father's knowledge*.

275. [OBS. After *oportuit* the present infinitive is to be construed by 'to have,' &c.]

Dulce est pro patriā mori. Coram populo loquētur. Argentum præ auro contemnitur. Cæcus de coloribus judicāre non potest. Etiam sine magistro vitia dis-

<sup>n</sup> A before consonants; ab before vowels, and it may stand before any of the consonants in *hujus laris*. Abs only before the consonants in quot.

<sup>o</sup> Absque is uncommon.

P E before consonants; ex before vowels or consonants.

cuntur. Usitātæ res facīle e memoriā elabuntur. Vapōres a sole ex aquis excitantur. Alexander omnia Oceāno tenus vicit. Caius febrī caret. Omnes<sup>q</sup> paup̄rūm auxilio egēmus. Fidem servārī oportuit. Prudentiā vestrā patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. In illo prælio equītes nostri audaciā et virtute excellerunt. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis?

## Lesson 55.

## 276. VOCABULARY 49.

[Prepositions, acc. or abl.]

In, with *acc.* into, to, towards, against, for.In, with *abl.* in, upon, among, in the case of.

[The prepositions *in* and *sub* govern the *acc.* in answer to *whither* (that is, after verbs of *motion*); and the *ablative* in answer to *where* (that is, after verbs of *rest*).]

Super, with *acc.* { above, over, beyond (generally after verbs of motion), besides.Super, with *abl.* { upon<sup>r</sup>; on or of (a subject enquired or written about).Sub *idem tempus*, about the same time.To heal, *medēri*, governing dative (by 191) (*medicine*).To seem, *vidēri*, *visus*. (*visible*).To desire, { *eūpēre*, *eūpīv*, *eūpīt* (with the added *i.* 187, x) } (*cupidity*).More, plus, *G. pluris*<sup>s</sup>. (*plural*).*English.**Latin.*

277. *How much* greater, *By how much* greater; *quanto* major.  
*So much* greater, *By so much* greater; *tanto* major.  
*Much* greater, *By much* greater; *multo* major.  
*Considerably* greater, *By some-deal* greater; *aliquanto* major.

278. (*Eng.*) The more he teaches, the more he learns.  
 (*Lat.*) *By-how-much* more he teaches, *by-so-much* more he learns.

(or) *By what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. ☞ 'The' — 'the' before two comparatives

<sup>q</sup> When the verb is of the *first* or *second* person, and an adjective is expressed, put *we* or *you* before the adjective. Thus, *omnes*, we all, &c.

<sup>r</sup> This belongs to poetry.<sup>s</sup> It has no other forms in the sing. In plural *plures*, *plura*, *G. plurium*, &c.

must be translated by 'quanto'—'tanto,' or by 'quo'—'eo.'

280. Obs. The *tanto* or *eo* goes with that assertion which follows from the other.

If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with 'if,' and let the 'if' sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.

(a) Thus in the example (278), his *learning* more will follow, or be the *consequence* of, his *teaching* more.

'If' he teaches much, *he will learn more* than he otherwise would.

### Exercise 55.

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo sæpe salubrior est. Quanto tempus est felicius, tanto brevius esse videtur. Quo plura habent homines, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccare. Juvēni p̄randum est; seni utendum. Nē jures. Jurasnċ?

### Lesson 56.

#### 282. VOCABULARY 50.

[The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective.]

<i>Facile,</i>	easily (from <i>facilis</i> , easy): <i>facilius</i> , more easily.
<i>Cito,</i>	quickly (from <i>citus</i> , quick): <i>citius</i> , more quickly.
Bark,	cortex, corticis, <i>m.</i> (decorticated).
To cover, surround,	ob-ducere, dux, duct.
Safe,	tutus.
Virtuous, upright,	honestus. Virtuously, <i>honeste</i> .
Courageously,	fortiter (comparative, <i>fortius</i> ).

283. (Eng.) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.

(Lat.) I ploughed it three times, *by which*† it might produce a *better* crop.

† Arāvi, &c., *quo* posset *meliores* fruges edere.

284. (a) When 'that' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.  
 (b) 'That' with comparatives and 'the,' By 'quo' may best translated be.
285. (Eng.) Some persons think.  
 (Lat.) There are some who think (sunt qui putent).  
 (Eng.) Some persons thought.  
 (Lat.) There were who thought (erant qui putarent).

Exercise 56.

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against<sup>u</sup> enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, *that* he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, *that* he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, construe *quo* by 'that,' and put 'the' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbōrum cortice obducuntur, *quo* sint a frigore et calore tutiores. An licet Christiānis gloriæ servire? Omnibus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquere. Miserere nostri. Natūrâ omnes propensissimus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbāra consuetudo immolandōrum hominū? Nonne mors quotidie ob oculos ponenda est?

Lesson 57.

<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
287. <i>I repent of my folly,</i>	It-repents me of my folly.
<i>I am vexed at my folly,</i>	It-vexes me of my folly.
<i>I am ashamed of my folly,</i>	It-shames me of my folly.
<i>I pity the poor,</i>	It-pities me of the poor.
<i>I am weary of life,</i>	It-irks me of life.

<sup>u</sup> Adversus.

- (a) Me meæ stultitiæ pœnitet v.  
 (b) Me meæ stultitiæ piget.  
 (c) Me meæ stultitiæ pudet.  
 (d) Misæret me paup̄erum.  
 (e) Tædet me vitæ.

288. When 'ut' the word for 'that' would be,  
 'That-not' may both be done by nē;  
 Unless a 'so' or 'such' preceded,  
 For then a 'non' will still be needed.

289. (a) Palp̄ebræ molles sunt ne  
 The eye-lids soft are, that  
 premant oculum.  
 they may not press the eye.

(b) Tanta est multitudo, ut non possint  
 So great is the multitude, that they cannot  
 numerāri.  
 be numbered.

## 290. VOCABULARY 51.

Slothful,	ignāvus (in, not; gnavus, active).
Sloth,	ignavia.
Some-time-or-other,	aliquando.
Physician,	medicus (medical).
Some,	aliquis (something, aliquid).
Attentive,	studiōsus (studious).
To order,	jubere, juss, juss (followed by acc. with inf.).
To learn by heart,	e-discere.
Athenian,	{ Atheniensis. (Ensis is a common termination of names derived from towns.)
Socrātes,	{ Socrāt-es, G. is (one of the greatest of heathen men. He taught the immortality of the soul, and was put to death by his country- men the Athenians).
To value more highly,	pluris facere.
To cause to be made,	{ faciendum curare (the partic. to agree with its noun).

## Exercise 57.

291. It is more pleasant to make a friend, than to have (one). The slothful man will some-time-or-other repent of his sloth. Christians pity the poor.

v These verbs are regularly conjugated: pœnitet, pœnitēbat, pœnituit, pœnituerat, pœnitēbit, &c.

He will  
 be the r  
 member  
 learnt-b  
 to deati  
 need me  
 I value  
 292.  
 ne frig  
 proper  
 sunt.  
 siliu Ca  
 est, quo  
 servare,  
 ut nemo  
 tem in  
 landum

293.  
 lowed b  
 294.  
 295.  
 296.  
 and aga  
 belongs

297.  
 discet p  
 te, et et  
 mihi su  
 Lupus o

He will give the physician son thing, *that* he may be *the* more attentive. I order my son never to remember this injury. We give verses to boys to-be-learned-by-heart. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. Have you not understood, that I do not need money? Anger has cost the state much blood. I value you more-highly every day.

292. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovent pullos, ne frigore lædantur. Eorum misereri oportet, qui propter fortunam, non propter malitiam in miseris sunt. Tui me miseret: mei piget. Raro primi consilii Caium pœnitet. Sapientia semper eo contenta est, quod adest. Scipio dicebat, malle<sup>w</sup> se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes occidere. Sic adhuc vixi, ut nemo unquam me ullius injuriæ accusaverit. Pontem in Istro flumine faciendum curavi. *Inter ambulandum* (177) multa mecum locutus est.

---

Lesson 58.

293. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tum* or *quum* followed by *tum*, are *both—and*.

294. Non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.

295. Tam—quam,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so—as : as—as.} \\ \textit{as well—as.} \\ \textit{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

296. Etiam, *even, also* (etiam atque etiam, *again and again*); quoque, *also, too* (*follows the word it belongs to*).

Exercise 58.

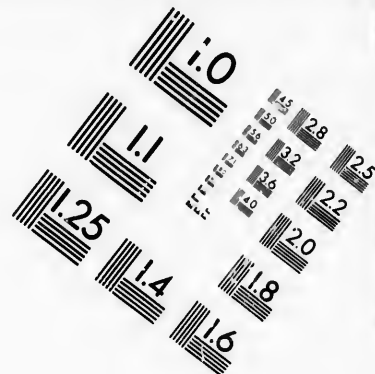
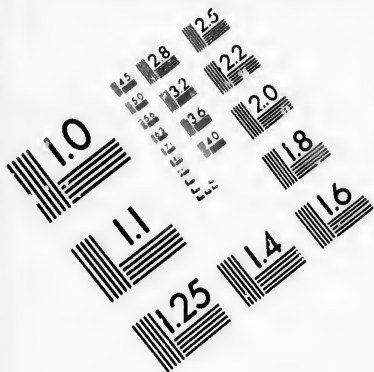
297. Amphibia et in aquâ et in terrâ vivunt. Et discet puer, et docebit. Etiam tu hinc abis? Rogo te, et etiam oro. Et Romæ vixi et Carthagine. Ut mihi succurras, etiam atque etiam (296) te rogo. Lupus quum ovem tum canem momorderat. Ovem

---

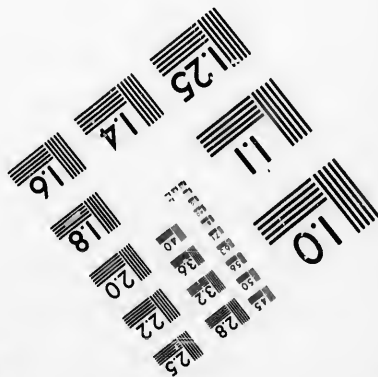
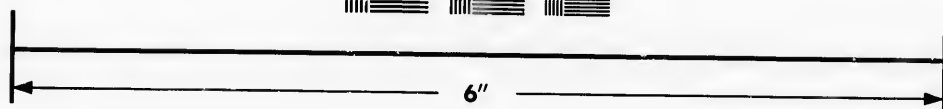
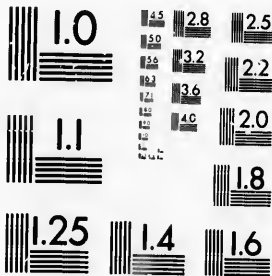
<sup>w</sup> That he had rather: infinitive of *mālo* (which see).







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

15  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36  
40  
45

10

non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. Horti parantur tum ad utilitatem, tum ad jucunditatem. Multæ herbæ quum jucundissimum tum saluberrimum cibum suppeditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catûlos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

---

Lesson 59.

298. Aut, or.

aut—aut; vel—vel, *either—or.*

299. sive—sive } *either—or.*

seu—seu } *whether—or.*

vel is (a) sometimes 'even;' (b) with superlatives, 'very,' 'extremely,' 'possible.'

300. *Sive*<sup>x</sup> is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

Exercise 59.

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigore rigent, aut uruntur calore. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morosus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese\* vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, pœnas persolvêrunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplinâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calore nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus est, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpõri prodest. Vel (299, a) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefêro. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

---

\* *Sive* is *si-ve*, 'or if.' Thus 'Caius *sive* Balbus,' is 'Caius, or if you like, Balbus' (for that is another name of his).

\* See p. 120, 23.

Lesson 60.

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an opposition.)

302. At, sed, autem, verum, vero, *but*.  
 Tamen, attāmen, } *yet; but; but yet*.  
 Veruntāmen, }  
 Atqui, *but or now* (as used in reasoning).

Exercise 60.

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus; at placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistocles; at Pericles idem non fecit. Si certum est<sup>y</sup> facere, facias; *verum* ne post confēras culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impediōr. Aut hoc aut illud est: non *autem* hoc (est); ergo (304) illud (est). Absolūtus est Caius; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniā. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum: *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

Lesson 61.

304. Nam, namque, enim, *for*.  
 Igitur, ideo, *therefore*.  
 Ergo, *therefore, then*.  
 Itaque, *accordingly; and so; therefore*.  
 Quare, *wherefore*.

Exercise 61.

305. In eā re prudentiā adjūtus est: *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summā æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnā nihil nobilius: nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus tantum exercitum devicit.

---

<sup>y</sup> Si certum est (*if it is fixed*) - *if you are resolved*.

Magno<sup>z</sup> Atilio ea cunctatic stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodēcim cum canibus venaticis exierunt. Aristīdes æqualis fere fuit Themistōcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est)? Nihil laboras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

---

Lesson 62.

306. ☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative*.

(a) But the 'perfect,' when it answers to our *perfect* with 'have,' is not considered a *past* tense.

307. 'Ut' with the subjunct. { (1) 'in order that;' 'that;' 'so that.'  
(2) the *infinitive* (expressing the *purpose*).  
(3) 'as' with *infinitive*.  
(4) 'granting that;' 'although.'  
(5) 'that,' and carry 'not' (after to fear).

(a) (*Ut* with the *indicative* is 'as,' 'when,' 'since,' 'after,' 'how'.)

(b) When *ut* introduces a *purpose*, the *subjunctive* verb will be construed by 'may,' 'might.' When it signifies a *consequence* (which it regularly does after 'so,' 'such'), the *subjunctive* verb is construed by the *indicative*: but the *imperfect* by the English *perfect*.

Exercise 62.

Obs. *possim* (*is, it, &c.*) = 'can' or 'may.'  
*possem* (*es, et, &c.*) = 'could' or 'might.'

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis laudentur. Stellarum tanta multitudo est, *ut* numerari non possint. In summis Alpibus<sup>a</sup> tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

---

<sup>z</sup> Stare magno, *to cost* a man dear. Magno agrees with *pretio* (price) understood.

<sup>a</sup> On the top of the Alps. *Summus, imus, medius, primus, extremus, reliquus, &c.*, agreeing with nouns, are generally construed

quam *liquescat*. Hominis corpus celsum et erectum est, ut cœlum intueri possit.

Ursi per hiemem tam gravi somno premuntur, *ut* nē vulneribus quidem excitentur. In Indiâ serpentes ad tantam magnitudinem adolescunt, *ut* integros hauriant cervos, taurosque.

(2) Vēnit (*he is come*) *ut* claudat (*to shut*), &c.

Enītar *ut* vincam. Magnopēre te hortor, *ut* hos de philosophiâ libros studiōse legas. Capram monet, *ut* in pratum descendat. Ante senectutem curavi, *ut* bene vivērem. Formīca sitiens ad fontem descendit, *ut* bibēret.

(3) No one is so good, *ut* nunquam peccet (*as never to sin*).

Quis tam demens est, *ut* suâ voluntate mœreat? Nulla anus tam delīra est, *ut* hæc credat.

(4) *Ut* desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. *Ut* circumspiciamus omnia, quæ populo grata atque jucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam concordiam reperiemus.

~~For~~ For *ut* after *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

### Lesson 63.

309. Nē with subjunctive,
- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| {                                    | (1) { 'lest,'                     |
|                                      | 'that,' and carry 'not' on to the |
|                                      | verb.                             |
|                                      | (2) 'not' with the infinitive.    |
| (3) 'not' with imperat. or subjunct. |                                   |
| (4) 'that' after to fear.            |                                   |

### Exercise 63.

(1) I did it, nē *that*, vidēret *he might not see*, &c.

310. (1) Palpēbræ molles sunt, nē premant oculum. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigōre

by substantives, followed by a genitive case. Imus mons, *the bottom or foot of the mountain*. Reliqua Ægyptus, *the rest of Egypt*. Sapientia prima, *the beginning of wisdom*. In extremo tertio libro, *at the end of the third book*.





312. Nullum animalium genus adeo ferox est, *quin*<sup>e</sup> vehementer amet prolem suam. Nulla fere pars est pecōrum, *quin*<sup>f</sup> ad commōda nostra facta sit. Vere sapiens nunquam dubitabit, *quin*<sup>g</sup> immortalis sit animus. Ex odoratu et adspectu pomorum dubitare non possūmus, *quin* hominibus ea donata sint. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, *quin* interdum peccet. Caius prohiberi non potuit, *quin* (311, 5) *erumpēret*. Non dubito, *quin* *ascenderis* murum. Nemo erit tam stultus, *quin* (311, 3) *hæc fateatur*. Non possum pro dignitate vivere, *quin* (311, 5) alterūtram partem offendērem. Negari non potest, *quin* turpius sit fallere quam falli. Nihil in rerum naturā invenitur, *quin* sapientissime institutum sit. Qui temere omnibus credit, effugere non potest<sup>h</sup>, *quin* sæpius fallatur. Infesta concio vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* protinus saxa in Polemōnem *jacēret*. Timoleontem mater, post fratris necem, nunquam adspexit, *quin* eum fratricidam impiumque *compellaret*.

Lesson 65.

313. After verbs of *hindering*, 'quominus' with the subjunct. is more common than *ne*. It may generally be translated by '*from*,' the verb being turned into the *participial substantive*: but after '*refuse*,' by the *infinitive*.

Exercise 65.

- (1) *Nothing deterred him, quominus faceret (from doing) &c.*  
 (2) *I will not refuse, quominus faciam (to do) &c.*

314. Nihil impedit, *quominus* id facere possūmus. Non deterret sapientem mors, *quominus*<sup>i</sup> in omne

<sup>e</sup> *As not to love, &c.*

<sup>f</sup> *That is not made.*

<sup>g</sup> *That the mind is.*

<sup>h</sup> *Cannot avoid being often deceived.*

<sup>i</sup> *Does not deter, &c. from forwarding the interests of the commonwealth, and of his own (friends). Consulere alicui = to consult a man's welfare, to forward his interests.*

tempus reipublicæ, <sup>k</sup> suisque consulat. Rebus terrēnis multa externa, *quominus* perficiantur, possunt obsistere. Quid obstat, *quominus* Caius sit beatus? Epaminondas non recusavit, *quominus* legis pœnam subiret. Non me terrēbis, *quominus* illud faciam. Prohibere Romanos, *quominus* frumentum sumērent, non poterant. Non me impediēs, *quominus* ei pecuniam illam numerem.

(Note. Literally, 'quo minus' = *by which the less*, or *so that the less*. Caio nihil obstat, *quo minus* sit beatus, is literally "Nothing stands in the way of Caius, *by which* he should be *the less* happy.")

### Lesson 66.

315. After words of 'fearing,' 'ne' and 'ut' appear to change meanings: ne = *that* (or *lest*): ut = *that* — *not*. (Also the *subjunct. present* must generally be construed by the *future*.)

Vereor ne,	}	I fear he <i>will</i> ; or <i>lest</i> he <i>should</i> , &c.
Vereor ut,		I fear he <i>will not</i> ; or <i>lest</i> he <i>should not</i> .
Vereor ne non,		

### Exercise 66.

316. Vereor ne labores tuos augeam. Pavor ceperat milites, ne mortifērū esset vulnus Scipionis. Homo scelestus semper verētur, ne peccata sua patefiant. Imprōbi semper sunt in metu, ne pœnā afficiantur aliquando. Vereor, nē brevi tempore fames in urbe sit. Verebamini, nē non id facerem. Vereor, nē consolatio nulla vera possit reperiri. Timeo, nē non impētrem. Metuebant, nē dolorem ferre non possent.

Timeo, ut labores tantos sustineas. Avarus semper veretur, ut satis habeat. Vereor, ut pax firma sit. Ignavus semper metuit, ut sustineat labores.

<sup>k</sup> Sui = a man's dependents, a man's friends.

a. In English we often leave out the conjunction 'that' after a verb of fearing.

*Metuo, ne artificium tuum tibi parum prosit.*  
I fear thy contrivance will profit thee little.

---

Lesson 67.

ON INTERROGATIVES.

317. All interrogatives take the indicative, *when the question is put directly*: they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation.

a. *Num, an, and nē* (which is always appended to another word), are not construed in direct sentences.

b. *Num* (in direct questions) expects the answer 'no.' *An* expects the answer 'no,' and expresses *impatience, indignation, &c.*<sup>1</sup> *Nonnē* expects the answer 'yes.'

c. The force of 'an' may generally be given by adding 'why' or 'then' to the question.

An credis? } *Why, do you believe . . . ?*  
{ *Do you believe then . . . ?*

Exercise 67.

318. *Quis non paupertatem extimescit? Unde lucem suam habet luna? Quid interest<sup>m</sup> inter hominem et bestiam? Quid feret crastinus dies? Quare vitia sua nemo confitetur? Cur te execrucias? Quid rides?*

*Ubi aut qualis est tua mens? Potes nē dicere?—Num sola maris aqua est salva? Visne miser esse? Estne animus immortalis? Nonne poētæ post mortem nobilitari volunt? Num scimus, quo se confērant\* aves peregrinantes? An tu esse me tristem putas? An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?*

Obs. *Ne* is often appended to the other particles; *numnē, annē, &c.*

---

<sup>1</sup> A question with *nē* may be such as to make us confidently expect 'yes' or 'no' for the answer. But the answer is then suggested by the *nature* of the question, not by the *form* of it.

<sup>m</sup> *What difference is there?* intersum.

\* *Betake themselves.*

## Lesson 68.

319. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when they ask *indirectly* or *doubtfully*; especially when another verb goes before the question.

(a) Such verbs are *ask, doubt, try, not know*; it is *uncertain, &c.*

(b) *Num, an, nē*, in a dependent sentence, are '*whether*;' and '*num*' does not imply that the answer '*no*' is expected.

(c) *An* is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

## Exercise 68.

320. *Quis enumeret<sup>n</sup> artium multitudinem? Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. Dic mihi, quem sol nobis adferat usum. Nescimus, quid serus vesper advecturus sit<sup>o</sup>. Quid futurum sit, nescimus. Quid vere nobis prosit<sup>p</sup>, non semper intelligimus. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. Num aegrotum interrogabis, an sanari velit? Cogita tecum, an gratiam retuleris, quibus gratiam debes. Quæritur<sup>q</sup> unquamne fuerint monocerotēs. Utrum\* velis, elige. Non me terrebis, quominus, utrum velim, eligam. Quid dicam nescio.*

## Lesson 69.

321. In *double questions* either

- { (1) The first is introduced by *num, utrum*, or the appended *nē*, and the second by *an (or)*: or,  
 (2) The *first* question has *no interrogative adverb*; the *second, an*, or the appended *nē*.

<sup>n</sup> *Who can reckon up?*

<sup>o</sup> *Will bring.*

<sup>p</sup> *Quid vere prosit (prosum) nobis? what is really beneficial to us?*

<sup>q</sup> It is sought = *it is a question, or a disputed point*: monocerotes, unicorns.

\* Neut. of *uter*.

## Exercise 69.

322. (1) [*Direct.*] *Utrum*<sup>r</sup> major est sol, *an* minor, quam terra? *Casunē* mundus est effectus, *an* vi divinā? *Num* sol mobilis est, *an* immobilis? *Sumusne* mortales, *an* immortales? [*Indirect or dependent.*] *Quæritur*, unusne sit mundus *an* plures? *Nihil refert*<sup>s</sup>, *utrum sit* aureum poculum, *an* vitreum.

(2) [*Direct.*] *Uter* est infelicior, cæcus *an* surdus? *Utrum* est pretiosius, aurum *an* argentum? [*Indirect.*] *Stellarum numerus par*<sup>t</sup> *an* impar sit, incertum est. *Hominibus prodesse*<sup>u</sup> natura jubet: servi liberine sint, quid refert<sup>v</sup>? *Die mihi, æstate*<sup>w</sup> *grandinet*, *an* hieme. *Multum interest*<sup>x</sup>, valentes imbecilline simus.

a. *Necne* in the second question is 'or not.'

## Lesson 70.

323. (Some conjunctions that always take the subjunctive.)

*Utinam*, *would that*.

*O si*, (*O! if*) *O! that, would that*.

*licet*, *although*.

*quasi*, *tanquam*, *as if*.

*dum*, *modo*, *dummōdo*, *provided; if only*.

*quamvis*, *however-much, however*.

<sup>r</sup> *Is the sun . . . ?*

<sup>t</sup> *Even: impar, odd.*

<sup>v</sup> *What matters it, or, what does it signify whether, &c.?*

<sup>w</sup> *In the summer.*

<sup>s</sup> *It makes no difference.*

<sup>u</sup> *Prosum.*

<sup>x</sup> *It makes a great difference.*

## Exercise 70.

*Note.*—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be construed by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari *possit* ! *Utinam* ense nullus magistratus *egeat* ! *O si* quisque virtutem *colat* ! *O si* omnes *cogitent*, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam ! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, *licet sit* aliqua præsentis et præteriti. *Impröbus* ita vivit, *quasi nesciat*, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. *Nemo*, *quamvis sit* locuples, aliorum ope carere potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, *dummödo* laborare *velint*, alat. Ita fac omnia, *tanquam spectet* aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, *ac si taceat*. *Utinam* hoc verum sit. Sic agis, *quasi* me ames.

a. When *provided only* is to be followed by *not*, *nē* is used.

*Sit* summa in jure dicendo severitas, *dummödo* ea *ne* *varietur* gratiâ.

## Lesson 71.

## ON PARTICIPLES.

325. Participles *assume* an assertion, which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so.

Thus, 'I went to Henry, *being ill*,' might be expressed (according to the meaning) by 'I went to Henry, *who was ill*;' 'I went to Henry, *because he was ill*;' 'I went to Henry, *though he was ill*,' &c.

326. Translate the participles in the following examples by *relative* sentences.



- (1) *ridens*, { *when he is (or was) laughing.*  
                   { *as he is (or was) laughing.*

331. In a sentence with *when* we often omit the auxiliary verb: hence

- (2) *ridens* may be construed '*when laughing.*'

332. If the participle stands alone, '*he,*' '*they,*' '*a man,*' '*one,*' '*men,*' &c. must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

- (3) *ridenti*, { *when he is laughing.*  
                   { *when one is laughing.*

- (4) *ridentibus*, when *men* (or *they*) are laughing.

#### Exercise 72.

333. *Leo esuriens rugit.* XERXES a Græcis victus in Persiam refugit. *Esurienti* (332, 3) gratior est cibus. *Sudanti* (332, 3) frigida potio perniciosissima est. DIONYSIUS tyrannus, Syracûsis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat. *Aranti* QUINCTIO CINCINNATO nuntiatum est, eum Dictatorem esse factum. *Hæc poma sedens* decerpsi. *Leones satiati* innoxii sunt. Ne mente quidem recte uti possûmus, multo cibo et potione *implêti*. Alit lectio ingenium, et studio *fatigatum* reficit. *Elephantes nemini nocent, nisi lacesiti.*

#### Lesson 73.

334. Construe the following participles by *verbs* with '*if.*'

- (1) *ridens*, { *if he \* laughs.*  
                   { *if a man (or one) laughs.*
- (2) *amatus*, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.*  
                   { *if I had been loved.*

---

\* The nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they,* &c. according to the person of the verb.



## Exercise 73.

335. Quis est qui, totum diem *jacülans*, non aliquando collineet<sup>b</sup>? Equum *empturus*, cave nō decipiaris. Hostes, hanc *adepti* victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confident. *Victi* hostes in Persiam refugient. *Admonitus* (334, 2) venissem. *Liberatus*, rus ex urbe evolabo. Romā *expulsus* Carthagine pueros docēbo.

## Lesson 74.

336. Construe the following participles by verbs with *because*, *for*, *since*; or by the *participial substantive* with *from* or *through*.

dubitans	{	(1) <i>because I doubt.</i>
		(2) <i>for I doubt.</i>
		(3) <i>since I doubt.</i>
		(4) <i>from doubting.</i>
		(5) <i>through doubting.</i>

## Exercise 74.

337. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse<sup>c</sup> *diffidens*. Hostes hanc *adepti* (336, 4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquā anātes degere non possunt, magnam victūs partem in aquā *quaerentes*. Respondent se perfidiam *veritos* revertisse. Stellæ nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ*. Cantus olorinus recte fabulōsus habētur, nunquam *auditus*.

## Lesson 75. [See note, p. 104.]

338. Construe the following participles by verbs with *though*, *although*.

(1) <i>ridens</i> ,	<i>though he laughs.</i>	
amatus,	{	(2) <i>though he is loved.</i>
		(3) <i>though he was loved.</i>
		(4) <i>even though he should be loved.</i>

<sup>b</sup> *Pres. subj.* construe by *pres. indic.*

<sup>c</sup> Construe mihi *myself*; and take no further notice of *ipse*.

339. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*. Hence we may sometimes construe

- (5) *ridens, though laughing.*  
 (6) *amatus, though loved.*

*Exercise 75.*

340. *Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie delinquentes. Multa transimus ante oculos posita. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenere nequeamus. Scripta tua jam diu expectans<sup>d</sup>, flagitare non audeo. Quis hoc non intelligit, Verrem absolutum (338, 4) tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse? Omnia magnâ voce dicens, simulabat tantum se furere. Ad cenam vocatus, nondum venit.*

*Lesson 76. [Note, p. 104.]*

341. Construe the following past participles by *after*, with a verb or participial substantive.

- (Act.) *passus*, { (1) *after he has suffered.*  
 (2) *after he had suffered.*  
 (3) *after suffering.*
- (Pass.) *amatus*, { (4) *after he was (or has been) loved.*  
 (5) *after he had been loved.*  
 (6) *after having been loved.*

*Exercise 76.*

342. *JOSEPHUS in Ægypto, multa mala perpessus (341, 3), ad summos honores evectus est. Israëlitaë, Ægypto egressi, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt commorati. Pleraque scribuntur orationes habitæ<sup>e</sup> jam, non ut habeantur. DIONYSIUS, a Syracusis expulsus<sup>f</sup>, Corinthi pueros docebat. ALEXANDER AB-*

<sup>d</sup> Use the perf. definite, 'have been expecting.'

<sup>e</sup> Habere orationem, to deliver a speech.

<sup>f</sup> Construe first by (341, 4); then by (341, 6).

DOLONIMUM diu *contemplatus* interrogavit, quâ patientiâ inopiam tulisset. *Lauti*<sup>g</sup> cibum capiunt Germani.

---

Lesson 77.

343. Construe the following participles by verbs, and place 'and' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be construed by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) *Ridens* he laughs, exclamat and exclaims.

(2) *Ridens* he laughed, exclamavit and exclaimed.

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum* leporem, he has seized the hare, lacerat, and is mangling it. (He mangles the seized hare.)

---

Exercise 77.

344. *Jussis divinis obediens* virtuti studet. *CRÆSUS*, a *Cyro victus*, regno *spoliatus est*. *Troja*, equi lignei ope capta, incendio delēta est. *Persæ* mortuos cerâ *circumlitos*<sup>h</sup> condunt. *Grues*, quum loca calidiora *petentes maria transmittunt*, triangūli efficiunt formam. *Illud ipsum*<sup>i</sup> non accidisset, si *quiescens* legibus *paruissem*. *Cum legionibus profectus*<sup>k</sup> celeriter adero. *TITUS MANLIUS Gallum*, in conspectu duorum exercituum *cæsum*, torque spoliavit. *Comprehensum* hominem *Romam ducēbant* (343, 3). *Mulier ALCIBIADEM* suâ veste *contectum* cremavit.

---

Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be construed *without*: the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

*non without*, *ridens laughing*.

*non without*, { *amatus being loved*.  
                  { *amatus loving him*.

---

<sup>g</sup> Partic. from *lavare*, to wash.

<sup>i</sup> Construe *ipse* by *even*.

<sup>h</sup> From *circumlīnere*.

<sup>k</sup> *Proficisci*.

## Exercise 78.

346. *Non petens regnum accepit. Romani Græcis non rogati ultro offerunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum non spolians. Neminem in familiaritatem recipe non cognitum*<sup>1</sup>. Multi homines vituperant libros *non intellectos*<sup>1</sup>. Beneficus est, qui non privatis commōdis permōtus, alios adjūvat.

347. OBS. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed in the same way: the substantive will be the nom. to the verb; or the acc. after it<sup>m</sup>.

Thus, Tarquinio regnante,	when Tarquinius was king.
te sedente,	as you were sitting.
captâ Tyro,	after Tyre was taken.
migraturis apibus,	when the bees are going to swarm.
fele comprehensâ,	if the cat is caught.
adempto pomo,	because his apple was taken away.
radice succisâ,	though the root was cut.
fascæ sublato, rodit,	he takes up the bundle AND returns.
te non salutato,	without saluting you.

348. Participles may often be construed by *substantives* of a kindred meaning: Thus,

<i>For</i>	<i>We may say,</i>
Ciconiæ redeuntes, The <i>returning</i> storks,	} The <i>return</i> of the storks.
Januario addito, By January <i>added</i> ,	} By the <i>addition</i> of January.
Leges violatæ, The <i>violated</i> laws,	} The <i>violation</i> of the laws.
Vere appropinquante, Spring <i>approaching</i> ,	} On the <i>approach</i> of spring.

<sup>1</sup> Use *act. partic.*

<sup>m</sup> It may sometimes be the accusative after the verb; because 'the bundle being taken *by him*' = 'the bundle was taken up *by him*;' which may be turned into 'he took up *the bundle*.'

## APPENDIX.

\* The articles that have an asterisk before them, are not to be learnt till the other articles are known perfectly.

### TERMINATIONS of SUBSTANTIVES and ADJECTIVES.

		<i>Sing.</i>				<i>Plur.</i>			
		G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.V.	G.	D.Abl.	Acc.
1.	ā	æ	æ	am	ā	æ	ārum	īs	ās
2.	{ ūs, ěr } ( <i>um neut.</i> )	ī	ō	um	ō	ī	ōrum	īs	ōs
3.	{ various (generally <i>not</i> containing the unaltered root) }	īs	ī	em (im)	{ ě } { (i) }	ēs	{ um ium }	ībūs	ēs
4.	{ ūs ( <i>neut. u</i> ) }	ūs	ī	um	ū	ūs	uum	{ ībūs ūbūs }	ūs
5.	ēs	ēī	ēī	em	ē	ēs	ērum	ēbūs	ēs

**Obs.** *In Neuters, Acc. is like Nom., and both in the plur. end in ā.*

\* 2. The Vocative is always like the nominative, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ě*. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius, genius*, contract *ie* into *i*.

3. Neuters in *e, al, r*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur. *ium*.

\* 4. (1) Nouns in *es, is, er*, not increasing in the gen., make Gen. pl. *ium*.

*But vates, proles, juvĕnis, senex, canis,  
Take um; with pater, frater, mater, panis.*

(2) Monosyllables take Gen. pl. *ium*. But the following, with a few more, take *um*:

Dux, grex,  
Vox, lex,  
Pcs, prex,  
Fur, rex,  
Mos, fraus,  
Flos, laus.

(3) Nouns in *s, x*, after a consonant, take Gen. pl. *ium*.

\* 5. The fourth declension is a *contracted* form of the third declension: G. *ūs, ūs*. Abl. *ūē, ū*, &c.

(1) The following nouns of the *fourth* have Abl. *ūbus* :

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus *add*, and artus ;  
Tribus, lacus, specus *too*, with veru, pecu, partus.

(2) Neuters in *u* have gen. *us*, dat. *u*, pl. *ua, uum*, &c.

\* 6. In the fifth declension *e* of G. and D. *is long*, if it follows a vowel; *short*, if it follows a consonant. (*faciēi, fidēi*.)

## 7. EXAMPLES.

	Sing.	I. (table)	II. (boy)	III. (father)	IV. (chariot)	V. (day)
Nom. <i>the</i>		mensa	puer	pater	currūs	dies
Gen. <i>of the</i>		mensæ	pueri	patris	currūs	diēi
Dat. <i>to or for the</i>		mensæ	puero	patri	curruī	diēi
Acc. <i>the</i>		mensam	puerum	patrem	currum	diem
Voc. <i>O</i>		mensa	puer	pater	currus	dies
Abl. <i>by, with the &amp;c.</i>		mensā	puero	patre	curru	diē

## Plur.

Nom. } <i>the</i>	}	mensæ	pueri	patres	currūs	dies
Voc. } <i>O the</i>						
Gen. <i>of the</i>		mensārum	puerorum	patrum	curruum	dierum
Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>	}	mensis	pueris	patribus	curribus	diebus
Abl. } <i>by, with the</i>						
Acc. <i>the</i>		mensas	pueros	patres	currus	dies.

## Sing.

	I. (hour)	II. (food)	III. (cloud)	IV. (fruit)	V. (thing)
Nom. <i>the</i>	hora	cibus	nubes	fructūs	res
Gen. <i>of the</i>	horæ	cibi	nubis	fructūs	rēi
Dat. <i>to or for the</i>	horæ	cibo	nubī	fructui	rēi
Acc. <i>the</i>	horam	cibum	nubem	fructum	rem
Voc. <i>O</i>	hora	cibe	nubes	fructus	res
Abl. <i>by, with the &amp;c.</i>	horā	cibo	nube	fructu	re

## Plur.

Nom. } <i>the</i>	}	horæ	cibi	nubes	fructūs	res
Voc. } <i>O the</i>						
Gen. <i>of the</i>		horarum	ciborum	nubium	fructuum	rerum
Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>	}	horis	cibis	nubibus	fructibus	rebus
Abl. } <i>by, with the</i>						
Acc. <i>the</i>		horas	cibos	nubes	fructūs	res.

NEUTER NOUNS.

	Sing.	II. (egg)	III. (song)	IV. (horn)
Nom.	<i>the</i>			
Acc.	<i>the</i>			
Voc.	<i>O the</i>	ovum	carmen	cornu
Gen.	<i>of the</i>	ovi	carminis	cornus
Dat.	<i>to, for the</i>	ovo	carmini	cornu
Abl.	<i>by, with the &amp;c.</i>	ovo	carmine	cornu
<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom.	<i>the</i>	ova	carmina	cornua
Acc.	<i>the</i>			
Voc.	<i>O the</i>			
Gen.	<i>of the</i>	ovorum	carminum	cornuam
Dat.	<i>to, for the</i>			
Abl.	<i>by, with the</i>	ovis	carminibus	cornibus.

8. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

I.	Or,	2.	1.	2. (neut.)	II.	Or,	2.	1.	2. (neut.)
		Bonus,	bonā,	bonum,			tenēr,	tenēra,	tenērūm,
		Bonī,	bonæ,	boni,			tenēri,	tenēræ,	tenēri,
		&c.	&c.	&c.			&c.	&c.	&c.
		Unus,	unā,	unum,			æger,	ægrā,	ægrum,
		Unīus *					ægri,	ægræ,	ægri,
		Unī,					&c.		
		Unum,	unam,	unum,					
		&c.	&c.	&c.					

9. These adjectives are of the second declension in the *mas.* and *neut.*; of the first in the *fem.*

10. The following are declined like *unus*.

With *ius, i*, do nullus, ullus,  
Totus, solus, uter,  
Alter but with shortened *i*,  
Alius, unus, neuter.

\* *Solius* appears to have *i* short, though commonly considered as long.

112 *Adjectives of One and Two Terminations.*

11. *Alius*, *G. alius* (= *ali-ius*). Neut. *aliud*.  
 Alter, *G. alterius*. — Uter, *G. utrius*.

ADJECTIVES OF ONE AND TWO TERMINATIONS

(which are all of the *third* declension).

12. [Adjectives in *is*.]—Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e*; Abl. *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; *G. ium*.

13. [Comparatives in *or*.]—Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us*; Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *a*; *G. um*.

14. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.* (except in *Nom. sing.*)

15. (a) They have Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*, *G. ium*.

For participles abl. *e* } is the more common.  
 For adjectives abl. *i* }

16. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of one or two terminations, are,—

		Two Termin.				Comparatives.				One Termin.			
		S.		P.		S.		P.		S.		P.	
		M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F. (N.)		M.F.	N.
N.V.	<i>is</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ores</i>	<i>ora</i>	<i>is</i>			<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>
G.	<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>		<i>oris</i>		<i>orum</i>		<i>i</i>			<i>ium</i>	
D.	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>		<i>ori</i>		<i>oribus</i>		<i>i</i>			<i>ibus</i>	
Acc.	<i>em</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>orem</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ores</i>	<i>ora</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>nom.</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>
Abl.	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>		<i>ore</i>	<i>(ori)</i>	<i>oribus</i>		<i>(e)</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ibus</i>	

17. An adjective must agree with its substantive in case, gender, and number.

18. EXAMPLES.

	M.	F.	N.
	( <i>A good boy.</i> )	( <i>A good mother.</i> )	( <i>A good work.</i> )
N.	<i>bonus puer</i>	<i>bona mater</i>	<i>bonum opus</i>
G.	<i>boni pueri</i>	<i>bonæ matris</i>	<i>boni operis</i>
D.	<i>bono puero</i>	<i>bonæ matri</i>	<i>bono operi</i>
A.	<i>bonum puerum</i>	<i>bonam matrem</i>	<i>bonum opus</i>
V.	<i>bone puer</i>	<i>bona mater</i>	<i>bonum opus</i>
Ab.	<i>bono puero</i>	<i>bonâ matre</i>	<i>bono opere</i>



Plural.

M.	F.	N.
( <i>Good boys.</i> )	( <i>Good mothers.</i> )	( <i>Good works.</i> )
N. boni pueri	bonæ matres	bona opera
G. bonorum puerorum	bonarum matrum	bonorum operum
D. bonis pueris	bonis matribus	bonis operibus
A. bonos pueros	bonas matres	bona opera
V. boni pueri	bonæ matres	bona opera
Ab. bonis pueris.	bonis matribus.	bonis operibus.

Singular.

( <i>A green field.</i> )	( <i>A green herb.</i> )	( <i>Green grass.</i> )
N. campus viridis	herba viridis	gramen viride
G. campi viridis	herbæ viridis	graminis viridis
D. campo viridi	herbæ viridi	gramini viridi
A. campum viridem	herbam viridem	gramen viride
Ab. campo viridi	herbâ viridi	gramine viridi

Plural.

N. campi virides	herbæ virides	gramina viridia
G. camporum viridium	herbarum viridium	graminum viridium
D. campis viridibus	herbis viridibus	graminibus viridibus
A. campos virides	herbas virides	gramina viridia
Ab. campis viridibus.	herbis viridibus.	graminibus viridibus.

Singular.

( <i>A bold man.</i> )	( <i>A bold woman.</i> )	( <i>A bold animal.</i> )
N. audax vir	audax femina	audax animal
G. audacis viri	audacis feminæ	audacis animalis
D. audaci viro	audaci feminæ	audaci animalis
A. audacem virum	audacem feminam	audax animal
Ab. audaci viro	audaci feminâ	audaci animalis

Plural.

N. audaces viri	audaces feminæ	audacia animalia
G. audacium virorum	audacium feminarum	audacium animalium
D. audacibus viris	audacibus feminis	audacibus animalibus
A. audaces viros	audaces feminas	audacia animalia
Ab. audacibus viris.	audacibus feminis.	audacibus animalibus.

N. duo ( <i>two</i> )	duo	duo	N. tres ( <i>three</i> )	tria
G. duorum	duarum	duorum	G. trium	
D. & Ab. duobus	duabus	duobus	D. tribus	
Acc. duos (duo)	duas	duo.	Acc. tres	tria.

## 19.

## THE VERB.

Terminations of the third persons of the Active Verb, &amp;c. \*

	1.	2.	3.	4.	Verb, <i>to defend.</i>
(1) Present,	at,	et,	it,	it,	{ defends; is defend- ing; does de- fend.
Imperfect,	(R) ābat,	ēbat,	ēbat,	iēbat,	{ was defending. (defended; did de- fend.)
Future,	(R) ābit,	ēbit,	et,	iet,	shall <i>or</i> will defend.
Perfect,	(r) it,				{ defended; did de- fend; has de- fended.
(2) Pluperfect	(r) ērat,				had defended.
Future perf.	(r) ērit,				{ shall <i>or</i> will have defended.
Imperat. (pers. 2. R)	ā,	ē,	ē,	ī,	{ defend; do thou defend.
{ Pres. subj.	(R) et,	cat,	at,	iat,	{ may ( <i>or</i> should) defend.
{ Imperf. subj.	(R) āret,	ēret,	ēret,	īret,	{ might, should, would defend.
{ Perf. subj.	(r) ērit,				{ may ( <i>or</i> should) have defended.
{ Pluperf. subj.	(r) isset,				{ might, should, would have defended.
Infin. Pres. } Imperf. }	(R) āre,	ēre,	ēre,	īre,	to defend.
Infin. Perf. } Pluperf. }	(r) isse,				to have defended.
Infin. Future,	part. in <i>rus</i> with <i>esse</i> ,				{ to be going ( <i>or</i> { about) to defend.
Gerunds,	(R) andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi,	of defending.
Supine,	(ρ) um,				to defend.
Part. Pres.	(R) ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,	defending.
Part. Fut.	(ρ) ūrus,				{ going ( <i>or</i> about) to defend.
<i>Passive Participles.</i>					
Past partic.	(ρ) us,				{ defended; being defended.
Part. in dus,	(R) andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus,	to be defended.

\* R, r, ρ, stand respectively for 'root of present,' 'root of perfect,' 'root of supine.' In repeating the table, the pupil should always say which root the termination is to be added to. Thus: 'Pluperfect; root of perfect; it.'

- Obs. 1.** *Shall*, in the first person, simply *foretells*; in the other persons, it *commands*.  
*Will*, in the first person, declares the *speaker's intention* in a positive manner; in the other persons, it simply *foretells*.
- \* **Obs. 2.** The *Imperfect* is construed by the *perf.* when it expresses *habits* or *repeated* actions.
- \* **Obs. 3.** The *pres.* '*does defend*,' and the *perf.* '*did defend*,' are used after *negative* words, and in *questions* and *strong affirmations*.
- \* **Obs. 4.** Remember that '*am come*' is *perf. act.*: '*is building*' *pres. pass.*: '*is built*' *perf. pass.*
- \* **Obs. 5.** The *pres. subj.* is often to be construed by *should*, *would*; and, in *questions*, by *can*, *shall*, &c.
- \* **Obs. 6.** The *imperf. subj.* is sometimes to be construed by *should have*, *would have*; and, in *questions*, by *could*, &c.
- \* **Obs. 7.** In sentences with *if*, *when*, *until*, &c. a *future* is often to be construed by a *present*, and a *future perfect* by a *perfect*. This is when the verb of the principal sentence is *future*.

20. Terminations of the persons.

	(Sing.)				(Plur.)		
	1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.
Active,	o, i, m,	s,	t,		mus,	tis,	nt.
Passive,	r,	{ris, re,	tur,		mur,	mīni,	ntur.

(1) This does not apply to the *Imperative*.

(2) *Perf. indic. Act.* has 2 sing. and plur. *isti, istis*, respectively, and 3 plur. *ērunt* or *ēre*.

## 21. (ACTIVE VOICE.) INDICATIVE

N.B. (R) means root of the present; for instance, from *amo*, 'am :'  
(r) means root of the perfect; for instance, 'amar :'  
(p) means root of supine; for instance, 'amat.'

PRESENT, [*defend; do defend; am defending.*]

am-	ō <sup>k</sup> ,	ās,	āt,	āmūs,	ātīs,	ant.
mon-	eō,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
reg-	ō,	īs,	īt,	īmūs,	ītīs,	• unt.
aud-	iō,	īs,	īt,	īmūs,	ītīs,	iunt.

IMPERFECT, (R) [*was defending; often, defended or did defend.*]

am-	ābam,	ābās,	ābāt,	ābāmūs,	ābātīs,	ābant.
mon-	ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.
reg-	ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.
aud-	iēbam,	iēbās,	iēbāt,	iēbāmūs,	iēbātīs,	iēbant.

FUTURE, (R) [*shall or will defend.*]

am-	ābō,	ābis,	ābit,	ābīmūs,	ābītīs,	ābunt.
mon-	ēbō,	ēbis,	ēbit,	ēbīmūs,	ēbītīs,	ēbunt.
reg-	am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
aud-	iam,	iēs,	iēt,	iēmūs,	iētīs,	ient.

PERFECT, [*defended; did defend—have defended † (perf. def.)*]

anāv-	}	ī,	.istī,	īt,	īmūs,	istīs,	{ ērunt, or ērē. }
monu-							
rex-(=regs)							
audiv-							

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*had defended.*]

anāv-	}	ēram,	ērās,	ērāt,	ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
monu-							
rex-							
audiv-							

FUTURE PERFECT, (r) [*shall or will have defended.*]

anāv-	}	ēro,	{ ēris, or ēris, }	ērīt,	{ ērimūs <sup>1</sup> , or ērimūs,	ērītīs, or ērītīs, }	ērint.
monu-							
rex-							
audiv-							

## IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE, (R) [*defend;—do you defend.*]

	2.	3.	2 pl.	3 pl.
am-	ā, āto,	āto,	ātē, ātōtē,	anto.
mon-	ē, ēto,	ēto,	ētē, ētōtē,	ento.
reg-	ē, īto,	īto,	ītē, ītōtē,	unto.
aud-	ī, īto,	īto,	ītē, ītōtē,	iunto.

<sup>k</sup> O, of verbs, is sometimes *short*. In the golden age, it first (after the comic writers) appears short in Ovid, e. g. in *nesciō*, *repēdō*, *putō*, *estō*.

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 118.

† The perfect *definite* (perf. with *have*) is used of an action *done* in

MOOD. (PASSIVE VOICE.)

(OBS. ~~125~~ Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *o*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. OBS. The (e) after 2nd pers. sing. means that the termin. is *re* or *ris*.)

PRESENT, [*am defended—is building.*]

am-	ör,	ärís(e),	ätür,	ämür,	ämñĩ,	antür.
mon-	eör,	ērís(e),	ētür,	ēmür,	ēmñĩ,	eutür.
reg-	ör,	ērís(e),	ýtür,	ýmür,	ýmñĩ,	untür.
aud-	iör,	irís(e),	itür,	imür,	imñĩ,	iuntür.

IMPERFECT, [*was defended (not strictly imperf.)—was building.*]

am-	ábär,	ábärís(e),	ábätür,	ábämür,	ábämñĩ,	ábantür.
mon-	ebär,	ebärís(e),	ebätür,	ebämür,	ebämñĩ,	ebantür.
reg-	ebär,	ebärís(e),	ebätür,	ebämür,	ebämñĩ,	ebantür.
aud-	iébär,	iébärís(e),	iébätür,	iébämür,	iébämñĩ,	iébantür.

FUTURE, [*shall or will be defended.*]

am-	ábör,	ábörís(e),	ábütür,	ábimür,	ábimñĩ,	ábuntür.
mon-	ebör,	ebörís(e),	ebütür,	ebimür,	ebimñĩ,	ebuntür.
reg-	är,	ērís(e),	ētür,	ēmür,	ēmñĩ,	eutür.
aud-	iär,	iērís(e),	iētür,	iēmür,	iēmñĩ,	ientür.

PERFECT, [*was defended; have been defended—is built.*]

• Made up of the *past partic.* with *sum*—(sometimes *fui*).

PLUPERFECT, [*had been defended.*]

Made up of *past partic.* and *eram*—(sometimes *fuëram*).

FUTURE PERFECT, [*shall or will have been defended.*]

Made up of *past partic.* with *ëro*—(sometimes *fuëro*).

MOOD.

(R.) [*be defended: 2 sing. like Infin. act.*]

	2.	3.	2 pl.	3 pl.
	ärë, ätör,	ätör,	ämñĩ, ämñör,	antör.
	erë, etör,	etör,	emñĩ, emñör,	eutör.
	erë, ytör,	ytör,	ymñĩ, ymñör,	untör.
	irë, itör,	itör,	imñĩ, imñör,	iuntör.

a present time, (no matter of what *length*), or *still continuing* in its completed state. *Am come* is the *perf. def.* of a neut. verb of motion.

N.B. Some grammarians, as in the later editions of King Edward VI.th's Latin Grammar, call the perfect with '*have*,' the perfect *indefinite*.

118 *Verb Active. Subjunctive, Participles, &c.*

(ACTIVE VOICE.)					SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT, (R) [ <i>may, should defend.</i> ]						
am-	em,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
mon-	cam,	cās,	cāt,	cāmūs,	cātīs,	cant.
reg-	am,	ās,	āt,	āmūs,	ātīs,	ant.
aud-	iam,	iās,	iāt,	iāmūs,	iātīs,	iant.

IMPERFECT, (R) [ <i>might, would, should defend.</i> ]						
am-	ārem,	ārēs,	ārēt,	ārēmūs,	ārētīs,	ārent.
mon-	ēreni,	ērēs,	ērēt,	ērēmūs,	ērētīs,	ērent.
reg-	ērem,	ērēs,	ērēt,	ērēmūs,	ērētīs,	ērent.
aud-	īrem,	īrēs,	īrēt,	īrēmūs,	īrētīs,	īrent.

PERFECT, (r) [ <i>may, should have defended.</i> ]														
amāv-	} ērim,	{ ēris,	} ērit,	{ ērīmūs <sup>1</sup> ,	} ērītīs,	} ērint.								
monu-							} or	} ērit,	{ or	} ērītīs,				
rex-											} ēris,	} ērit,	{ ērīmūs,	} ērītīs,
audiv-														

PLUPERFECT, (r) [ <i>might, should, would have defended.</i> ]						
amāv-	} issem,	} issēs,	} issēt,	} issēmūs,	} issētīs,	} issent.
monu-						
rex-						
audiv-						

INFINITIVE					
PRESENT,	{ (R) [ <i>to defend: to be defending.</i> ]	1.	2.	3.	4.
IMPERF.		ārē,	ērē,	ērē,	īrē.
PERFECT,	{ (r) [ <i>to have defended.</i> ]				
PLUPERFECT,		issc.			
FUTURE, [ <i>to be going, or about to defend.</i> ] Part. of fut. (in <i>rus</i> ) with <i>esse</i> .					

PARTICIPLES, &c.

GERUNDS, (R) [ <i>of &amp;c. defending.</i> ]				
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.	
SUPINE, (root of its own,) { [ <i>to defend</i> —after verbs of <i>motion.</i> ] um. [ <i>to defend</i> *—after some adjectives.] u.				
PARTIC. PRESENT, (R) [ <i>defending.</i> ]				
ans,	ens,	ens,	iens.	
PARTIC. PERFECT, [ <i>having defended.</i> ] Nonc. [Supplied by <i>quum</i> with <i>perf.</i> or <i>pluperf. subj.</i> or by <i>abl. absolute.</i> ]				
PARTIC. FUTURE, (ρ) [ <i>going or about to defend.</i> ] ūrus.				

\* Often construed, *to be defended.*

<sup>1</sup> The old grammarians are at variance respecting the quantity of *i* in *rimus, ritīs*, of *fut. perf.* and *perf. subj.* Poets use these syllables

MOOD. (PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT, [*may, should be defended.*]

am-	ēr,	ērīs(e),	ētūr,	ēmūr,	ēmīnī,	entūr.
mon-	eār,	eārīs(e),	eātūr,	eāmūr,	eāmīnī,	eantūr.
reg-	ār,	ārīs(e),	ātūr,	āmūr,	āmīnī,	antūr.
aud-	iār,	iārīs(e),	iātūr,	iāmūr,	iāmīnī,	iantūr.

IMPERFECT, [*might, would, should be defended.*]

am-	ārēr,	ārērīs(e),	ārētūr,	ārēmūr,	ārēmīnī,	ārentūr.
mon-	ērēr,	ērērīs(e),	ērētūr,	ērēmūr,	ērēmīnī,	ērentūr.
reg-	ērēr,	ērērīs(e),	ērētūr,	ērēmūr,	ērēmīnī,	ērentūr.
aud-	irēr,	irērīs(e),	irētūr,	irēmūr,	irēmīnī,	irentūr.

PERFECT, [*may, should have been defended.*]

Past partic. with *sim*—(sometimes *fuërim*).

PLUPERFECT, [*might, should, would have been defended.*]

Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuisse*).

MOOD.

PRESENT,	{	[ <i>to be defended.</i> ]			
IMPERF.		1.	2.	3.	4.
		ārī,	ērī,	ī,	irī.

PERFECT, { [*to have been defended.*]  
 PLUPERFECT, { Past partic. with *esse*—(sometimes *fuisse*).

FUTURE, [*to be going or about to be defended.*]  
 Supine (in *um*) with *iri*.

PARTICIPLES, &c.

{ PAST PARTIC. (p) { *defended.*  
*being defended.*  
*having been defended.* } us.

PARTIC. FUTURE (R.) (implying *duty, necessity, &c.*)  
 [*to be defended.*]

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	icendus.

both as *long* and *short*, but the preponderance of usage appears to be in favour of *ī*, in both tenses. (Zumpt.) Grotefend marks *ëri-mus*, &c.

120 Verbs in 'io.' Pronouns—personal, possessive.

22. Some verbs of the third end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative, infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive* of both voices.

		Imperat.	Infin.	Impf. Subj.
(a) Active,	suscipio,	suscipe,	suscipere,	susciperem.
Passive,	suscipior,	suscipere,	suseipi,	susciperer.

(b) In the present of both voices they retain the *i* in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons:

Active,	suscipio,	suscipis,	it, &c.	3 plur. <i>suscipiunt</i> .
Passive,	suscipior,	suscipris,	itur, &c.	3 plur. <i>suscipiuntur</i> .

Esse, *to be*.

INDICATIVE.

Present ( <i>I am</i> ),	sum,	es,	est,	sumus,	estis,	sunt.	
Imperf. ( <i>I was</i> ),	eram,	eras,	erat,	eramus,	eratis,	erant.	
Fut. ( <i>I shall or will be</i> ),	erō,	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erunt.	
Imperat. ( <i>be thou</i> ),		es (esto),	esto,	este (estote),	sunto.		
Subj. Pres. ( <i>I may be</i> ),	sim,	sis,	sit,	simus,	sitis,	sint.	
Subj. Imp. ( <i>I might or could be</i> ),		essem *,	esses,	esset,	essemus,	essetis,	essent.

Infin. esse: *perf.* fuisse: *fut.* fore or futurum esse.  
*Perf.* fui (*was, have been*). Tenses from *r*, regular.

23. PRONOUNS.

(Personal Pronouns.)

	<i>Sing.</i>				<i>Plur.</i>		
	N.	G.	D.	A. Abl.	N. Acc.	Gen.	D. Abl.
(a)	ego,	mei,	mihī,	me,	nos,	nostrum or nostri,	nobis.
	tu,	tui,	tibi,	te,	vos,	vestrum or vestri,	vobis.
<i>Sing. &amp; Plur.</i>	} sui,		sibi,	se			
				(sese).			

(Possessive Pronouns. All regular, except that instead of *mee* (voc. masc.) *mi* is used.)

(b)	(mine)	meus,	mea,	meum.	noster,	nostra,	nostrum (ours).
	(thine)	tuus,	tua,	tuum.	vester,	vestra,	vestrum (yours).
		suus,	sua,	suum,	{ his, hers, its; or his own, &c.		
					{ theirs; or their own, &c.		

\* Forem, fores, &c. is also used as imperf. subj.



(e) (Demonstrative.)

[Hic (*this*\*, *the latter*); ille (*that, the former*); is (*that, antecedent to qui*); ipse (*-self, myself, thyself, himself, &c.*); iste (*that, that of yours*); idem (*the same*).]

	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> hic, <i>f.</i> hæc, <i>n.</i> hoc,	hujus,	huic,	hunc, hanc, hoc,	hoc, hac, hoc.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> hi, <i>f.</i> hæ, <i>n.</i> hæc,	horum, harum, horum,	his,	hos, has, hæc.	his.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> is, <i>f.</i> ea, <i>n.</i> id,	ejus,	ei,	eum, eam, id,	eo, eâ, eo.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> ii †, <i>f.</i> eæ, <i>n.</i> eâ,	eorum, earum, eorum,	iis †,	eos, eas, eâ.	iis †.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> ille, <i>f.</i> illa, <i>n.</i> illud,	illius,	illi,	illum, illam, illud,	illo, illâ, illo.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> illi, <i>f.</i> illæ, <i>n.</i> illâ,	illorum, illarum, illorum,	illis,	illos, illas, illâ.	illis.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> iste, <i>f.</i> ista, <i>n.</i> istud,	istius,	isti,	istum, istam, istud,	isto, istâ, isto.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> isti, <i>f.</i> istæ, <i>n.</i> istâ,	istorum, istarum, istorum,	istis,	istos, istas, istâ.	istis.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> ipse, <i>f.</i> ipsa, <i>n.</i> ipsum,	ipsius,	ipsi,	ipsum, ipsam, ipsum,	ipso, ipsâ, ipso,
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> ipsi, <i>f.</i> ipsæ, <i>n.</i> ipsâ,	ipsorum, ipsarum, ipsorum,	ipsis,	ipsos, ipsas, ipsâ.	ipsis.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> idem, <i>f.</i> eadem, <i>n.</i> idem,	ejusdem,	eidem,	eundem, eandem, idem,	codem, eâdem, eodem.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> iidem, <i>f.</i> eadem, <i>n.</i> eâdem,	eorundem, earundem, eorundem,	iisdem,	eosdem, easdem, eâdem.	iisdem.

\* The pronouns that mean 'that,' become *he, she, it, &c.* when they agree with *man, woman, or thing* understood.

† Or *ei*.

‡ Or *eis*.

## (d) (Relative.)

	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>m.</i> qui, <i>f.</i> quæ, <i>n.</i> quod,	cujus,	cui,	quem, quam, quod,	quo, quâ, quo.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>m.</i> qui, <i>f.</i> quæ, <i>n.</i> quæ,	quorum, quarum, quorum,	quibus,	quos, quas, quæ,	quibus.

(e) The interrogative pronoun is,

- { (1) quis, quæ, quid (generally used as a *substantive*).  
{ (2) qui, quæ, quod (———— an *adjective*).

The second is gone through exactly like the relative; and so is the first, with the exception, of course, of the neut. sing. *quid*.

(f) *Quis* is also 'any' (indefinite); the fem. sing. and neut. pl. are then sometimes *qua*.

(g) The compounds of *qui*, *quis*, follow the declension of those pronouns. In the following list the appended syllables in italics are added unaltered to the case of *quis* or *qui*.

<i>Qui-dam,</i>	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>Qui-vis,</i>	} <i>any you please.</i>
<i>Qui-libet,</i>	
<i>Quis-quam,</i>	{ <i>any; any single one</i> (when it is denied that there are any).
<i>Aliquis,</i>	{ <i>any; some</i> (though not much or many: <i>ali-quis, -qua, -quid</i> or <i>-quod</i> . Neut. pl. <i>-qua</i> ).
<i>Quis-piam,</i>	<i>some, somebody.</i>
<i>Quis-que,</i>	<i>each.</i> ( <i>Unusquisque, each one.</i> )
<i>Quisquis,</i>	<i>whoever</i> (used without a substantive: neut. <i>quicquid</i> ).
<i>Qui-cunque,</i>	<i>whoever; whatever</i> (used with a subst.).
<i>Ecquis?</i>	{ <i>(does) any?</i> (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always <i>ecqua</i> . It expects the answer <i>none</i> .)
<i>Uter,</i>	{ <i>which</i> (of two): <i>uterque, each</i> ( <i>utraque, utrumque</i> ; G. <i>-iusque</i> ).
<i>Alius</i> (a, ud),	{ <i>another; other.</i> (When <i>alius</i> is used twice in a sentence, the first is construed 'some.')
<i>Alter,</i>	<i>the other</i> (of two); <i>another; one more.</i>
<i>Talis,</i>	<i>such</i> ; antecedent to <i>qualis</i> ( <i>as</i> ).
<i>Tantus,</i>	<i>so great</i> ; antecedent to <i>quantus</i> ( <i>as</i> ).
<i>Tot,</i>	<i>so many</i> ; antecedent to <i>quot</i> ( <i>as</i> ).

☞ The compounds of *quis* have generally  
 Neuter *quid* when used *without* } a substantive.  
 Neuter *quod* when used *with* }  
☞ The *quid* is generally written *quic* before *q*.  
 Thus, *quicquam* (*quidquam*), 'any thing;' *quicquid*  
 (*quidquid*), 'whatever.'

24. IRREGULAR VERBS.

(1.) Possum, Infn. *posse*, I am able; I can.

*Pres. Ind.* possum, potes, potest, possumus, potestis, possunt.  
*Pres. Subj.* possim, possis, possit, possimus, possitis, possint.  
*Imp. Subj.* possem, posses, posset, possemus, possetis, possent.  
*Root of Perf.* potu. (See page 50, 149.)  
*Imp. Ind.* poteram. *Fut.* potero.

(2.) { *Völo*, am willing; wish.  
 { *Nölo*, am unwilling (*for non volo*).  
 { *Mälo*, had rather (*for magis or mage volo*).

*Pres.* { *völo*, vis, vult, volümus, vultis, volunt.  
 { *nölo*, non vis, non vult, nolümus, nou vultis, nolunt.  
 { *mälo*, mavis, mavult, malümus, mavultis, malunt.

*Subj. Pres.* vëlim, nölim, mälim. (*is, it: imus, itis, int.*)  
*Subj. Imperf.* vellem, nollem, mallem. (*es, et: emus, etis, ent.*)  
*Infinitive,* velle, nolle, malle.

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or particples (except *volens, nolens*), nor imperative, except *noli, nolito,—nolite*.

*Noli putare* (be unwilling to think =) *do not think*.

(3.) Fero \*, tüli, lätum, to bear. *Infn.* ferre. *Imper.* fer; ferte.

*Pres. Indic.* fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.  
*Imp. Subj.* ferrem, ferres, &c. [*Pass. ferrer.*]

☞ Fertur *for* feritur; ferris *for* fereris.

(4.) Fio, become; am made or done: partly used as *pass. of facio*.

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has *fiërem* for *ferem*, and an irregular infn. *fieri*. It has no *perf.*; *factus sum, eram, &c.* being in use.

*Imperf. Subj.* fiërem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.  
*Infn. Pres.* fiëri.

\* This verb has *fers, fert, fertur*, for *feris, ferit, feritur*; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem, ferre, &c.*, for *ferërem, ferëre*.

124 *Irregular Verbs and Substantives : Genders.*

(5.) Eo (ivi, itum, ire), go.

*Pres. Indic.* eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.

*Pres. Subj.* eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, cant.

*Participle,* iens, euntis, eunti, &c.

*Gerunds,* eundi, eundo, eundum.

*Imp.* ibam. *Fut.* ibo. *Imper. i.* Imperf. *Subj.* irem. *Perfect,* ivi: in the compounds generally ii.

(6.)	{	Queo, am able, can.	These verbs are conjugated like eo, as far as they are in use: 3 plur. queunt, nequeunt. Subj pres. queam, nequeam, &c.
		Nequeo, am unable, cannot.	

25. SUBSTANTIVES.

Deus,	{	<i>God. Voc. Deus. Nom. and Dat. plur. generally take i for e. Dii or Di; Diis or Dis.</i>
Jupiter,		<i>Jupiter. G. Jovis, &amp;c.</i>
Bos,	{	<i>bull, cow, ox. G. bovis; G. pl. boum; D. bōbus or būbus.</i>
Respublica,		<i>republic, commonwealth. G. reipublica, &amp;c.; the substantive res, and the adj. publica in agreement with it.</i>
Jusjurandum,	{	<i>oath. G. jurisjurandi, &amp;c.; jus neut., with the partic. jurandum in agreement.</i>
Vis,		<i>strength: —, vim, vi; vires, virium, viribus,</i>
Vir,		<i>man: viri, &amp;c., as 2nd: viri, virōrum, &amp;c.</i>

 *Aër, aether,* have generally the acc. *aëra, aethëra.*

26. GENDERS.

I. DECL. FEMININE, except names of men and designations of men.

II. DECL. MASCULINE, except *um* neuter.

But *alvus, humus, vannus, colus,*  
Though belonging to the second,  
Are feminine: and *virus* (juice),  
And *pelagus* are neuter reckoned:  
*Vulgus* mostly goes with these,  
But may be masculine, if you please.

III. DECL. (A.) Masculine terminations:

{	er, or, os,
	es <i>increasing,</i>
	o, when not <i>do, go, io.</i>

er) Neuters many end in *er,*  
As *verber, iler, uber, ver;*  
With plants in *er,* as *acer* and *papaver,*  
With many others: add to these *cadaver.*

or) Of neuters there are four in *or*;  
*Marmor, æquor, ador, cor* :  
 A feminine is *arbor* (tree),  
 A second you will hardly see.

os) Neuters are *chaos, melos, os* :  
 But feminine are *cos* and *dos*.

es) Of *es* increasing, neuter *æs*  
 Is found : and feminine are these ;  
*Quies, merces, merges, seges,*  
 With *compes, inquires, and teges*.

o) *Caro* is *flesh* : remember this  
 As *feminini generis*.

(B.) Feminine terminations :

{ do, go, io,  
 as, is, aus, x,  
 es not increasing,  
 s impure.

do, go, io) *Cardo, ordo, and papilio,*  
 With *ligo, margo, vespertilio,*  
 Are masculine : add to these *quaternio*  
*Pugio, stellio, scipio, ternio* \*.

as) Three are the masculines in *as*,  
*As, adamas, and elèphas* :  
 Three are the neuters too in *as*,  
*Vas* (*vasis*), with *nefas* and *fas*.

is) Many words that end in *is*  
 Are *masculini generis* :  
*Torris, vectis, vermis, mensis,*  
*Unquis, ignis, orbis, ensis,*  
*Ammis, axis et annalis,*  
*Sentis, cassis, canalis,*  
*Callis, caulis, collis, crinis,*  
*Panis, postis, piscis, finis,*  
*Fustis, funis, fascis, follis* :  
 genitivo crescut *pollis,*  
*Lapis, pulvis, cucumis,*  
*Cinis, sanguis, glis, vomis.*

x) *Calix, and codex* (*codicis*),  
 Are *masculini generis* ;  
 So *vertex, cortex,* and the same the case is  
 With *pollex, grex,* and with *thorax* (*thoracis*).

s impure) *Dodrans, quadrans, mons, and pons,*  
 Are *masculine*, with *rudens, dens, and fons* :

\* With a few more : such as *unio* (pearl), *optio* (a military substitute), &c. : those which are *abstract nouns* are all feminine.

Add *adeps* (fat), with *confluens*,  
*Oriens*, *hydrops*, *occidens*.

(C.) Neuter terminations :

{ c, a, t, e, l, n,  
  { ar, ur, us.

- 1) *Sol*, the sun that brightly shines,  
*Mugil* and *sal* are masculines.
- 11) The masculines that end in *n*  
Are *pecten*, *lien*, *ren*, and *splen*.
- ur) These are the masculines in *ur*,  
*Vultur*, *turtur*, *furfur*, *fur*.
- us) Two names of beasts that end in *us*  
Are masculine, *lepus* (hare) and *mus*.  
These too are feminines in *us*,  
*Juventus*, *virtus*, *servitus* \*,  
*Tellus*, *senectus*, *incus*, *salus*,  
With *pecus* (*pecūdis*), and *palus*.

IV. DECL. *Us* masculine : *u* neuter.

- us) But these are feminines in *us*,  
*Tribus*, *acus*, *porticus*,  
*Domus*, *nurus*, *socrus*, *anus*,  
*Idus* (*iduūm*), and *manus*.

V. DECL. Feminine. But,

*Meridies* is masculine ; and so  
Is *dies* in plurali numero †.

OBS. ☞ Some nouns have a particular gender, from their meaning.

The names of *males*, of *rivers*, *months*, and *winds*,  
Remember well ; for masculine are these.  
The names of *females*, *countries*, *islands*, *towns*,  
Are feminine ; so are the names of *trees*.

But to these rules there are many exceptions : for instance, the names of *trees*, *plants*, &c. in *er* of the third are *neuter* (see *rule* under A) : and the *plural* names of towns in *i* are *masc.* ; those in *um*, and in *er*, *ur*, of the *third*, are *neut*.

\* With the exception of these four words, nouns in *tus*, *sus*, without *personal* meaning, are mostly nouns of the *fourth decl.* from the *supine* root.

† In the singular it is commonly *masc.* ; seldom feminine, except when a *fixed day* is spoken of, or when it is equivalent to a *length of time*.

27. DECLENSIONS OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

	Nom.	Genitive.	Accus.
Pers. 1. { Sing. Plur.	<i>I</i> <i>we</i>	<i>my</i> or <i>mine</i> <i>our</i> or <i>ours</i>	<i>me</i> <i>us</i>
Pers. 2. { Sing. Plur.	<i>thou</i> { <i>ye</i> <i>you</i> }	<i>thy</i> or <i>thine</i> <i>your</i> or <i>yours</i>	<i>thee</i> <i>you</i>
Pers. { Sing. { mas. fem. neut. Plur.	<i>he</i> <i>she</i> <i>it</i> <i>they</i>	<i>his</i> <i>her</i> or <i>hers</i> <i>its</i> <i>their</i> or <i>theirs</i>	<i>him</i> <i>her</i> <i>it</i> <i>them</i>
	Relative and Interrogative. }	<i>who</i> <i>which</i>	<i>whose</i> { <i>of which</i> or <i>whose</i> }
Demonstrative	{ <i>this</i> , plural <i>these</i> . <i>that</i> , plural <i>those</i> .		

28. TABLE OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

Indicative Mood.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	{ <i>I defend</i> <i>I am defending</i> <i>I do defend</i> }	. . . . <i>I am defended.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>I was defending</i>	. . . . (none).
Perfect-Definitc. }	<i>I have defended</i>	. . . . <i>I have been defended.</i>
Perfect.	{ <i>I defended</i> <i>I did defend</i> }	. . . . <i>I was defended.</i>
Pluperfect.	<i>I had defended</i>	. . . . <i>I had been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>I shall or will defend</i>	. . . . <i>I shall or will be defended.</i>
Future-Perfect. }	<i>I shall or will have defended</i>	{ <i>I shall or will have been defended.</i>

Imperative Mood.

S.	P.	S.	P.
<i>Defend (thou).</i>	<i>Defend (ye).</i>	<i>Be thou defended.</i>	<i>Be ye defended.</i>

Forms that often answer to the Tenses of the Latin Subjunctive.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	<i>I may or can defend . . .</i>	<i>I may or can be defended.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>I might, could, should, or would defend.</i>	<i>I might, could, should, or would be defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>I may or can have defended.</i>	<i>I may or can have been defended.</i>
Pluperfect.	<i>I might, could, should, or would have defended.</i>	<i>I might, could, should, or would have been defended.</i>

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>To defend . . . . .</i>	<i>To be defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>To have defended . . . . .</i>	<i>To have been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>To be going or about to defend.</i>	<i>To be going or about to be defended.</i>

Participles.

Present.	<i>Defending . . . . .</i>	}	<i>Defended (past part.).</i>
			<i>Being defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>Having defended . . . . .</i>		<i>Having been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>Going or about to defend . . . . .</i>		<i>Going or about to be defended.</i>

29. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus,	<i>good,</i>	melior,	optimus.
malus,	<i>bad,</i>	pejor,	pessimus.
parvus,	<i>little,</i>	minor,	minimus.
magnus,	<i>great,</i>	major,	maximus.
multus,	<i>much,</i>	plus ( <i>neut.</i> ),	plurimus.

*Nom. Acc. Plus. Gen. pluris* (no other case in sing.). *Plural,*  
*N. A. plures, plura. Gen. plurium. D. pluribus.*

30. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,  
 Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,  
 Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.



## QUESTIONS.

---

This Table is referred to in the Exercises by a numeral above the line followed by a curve, as 6).

[Those on the *Syntax* have an asterisk before them.]

N.B. The pupil should learn the Terminations of Substantives (p. 109) and of the third persons of the Verb (p. 114) as soon as possible.

---

1. Give the accusative endings. (9.)
2. Repeat the terminations of the third persons. (32.)
3. Give the genitive endings. (40.)
- \*4. In what case is the *price* or *value* put sometimes? [*The Gen.* 47.]
5. What are the endings of nouns expressing *virtues, vices, dispositions, &c.*? (47, h.)
- \*6. By what case are some *neuter* adjectives followed? *What* adjectives are so used? (*Ans.* Indefinite numerals.)  
What substantive is so used? (*Ans.* The indeclinable substantive '*nihil*,' 'nothing.' 56.)
- \*7. What often stands as the nominative case to the verb? (60, n.)  
When an *infinitive mood* (or *sentence*) is the nominative case to the verb, where is it placed in *English*? (*Ans.* After the verb, being *represented* by the pronoun '*it*,' which is not to be translated. 60, n.)  
In what *gender* is the adjective then put? (*Ans.* In the *neuter*.)
8. How is the *acc. plur.* got from the *acc. sing.*? What must '*um*' be turned into, to give the *acc. plur.* of the second? What is always the termination of the *acc. neut. plural*? (64.)
9. By what *prepositions* is the *dat.* construed? [67. N.B. These prepositions are called *signs* of the *dative*.]  
a) What are the signs of the *ablative*? (67.)  
b) By what preposition is an *ablative* of time construed? (*Ans.* By *in* or *at*.)  
c) How is an *acc.* of time construed? (*Ans.* By '*for*,' or without any *prepos.* 72.)
10. To what declension do adjectives in '*is*' belong? [*The third.*]

- Of what gender are they? [*m. and f.*] What is their *neuter* form? [*e.*] Is their ablative *e* or *i*? [*i.*]<sup>a</sup>
- \*11. In what case do you put the name of a town *where* a thing was done? When is the town *where* put in the *abl.*? When in the *gen.*? (72, s.)
- \*12. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *when*? [In the *abl.*]
- \* In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *how long*? [In the *acc.*]  
Is 'for' a sign of the *dative*, when it stands before a noun of time? [*Ans.* No, of the *acc.*]
13. How may the *third plural* be got from the *third singular*? Into what must 'it' of the perfect be changed? 'it' of the fourth? 'it' in 'erit?' all other *it*'s? (79.)
14. Give the terminations of the *nom.* and *gen. plural.* (81.)
- \*15. What case does *in* govern when it means 'into'? [*Acc.*]  
\_\_\_\_\_ 'in?' [*Abl.*]  
\_\_\_\_\_ *ex* govern? [*Abl.*]
- \*16. How must 'not' with the imperative be translated<sup>b</sup>? [By *nē.*]  
What word must stand before the *not* in English? [The 'do' of the imperative.]
- \*17. How is the thing *with which* any thing is done translated? or, what case answers to 'with what?' [*Abl.*]
18. When 'thing' or 'things' is left out, in what *gender* must the adjective be put? [*Neut.*]
- \*19. What cases follow verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning*? [Acc. of *person*: Gen. of the *charge.*]
- \*20. By what cases may 'of great valour' be translated into Latin? [*Gen.* or *Abl.*]
- \*21. In what case does a noun of *price* stand, when it answers to 'for how much?' [In the *abl.*]
- \*22. (a) When must the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, them, &c.*) be translated by *sui, &c.*? [When the *pron. represents the same person as the nom. to the verb.*] (b) What preposition is omitted after *give, cost, the adj. like, &c.*? [*To.*]
- \*23. When is one noun said to be *in apposition* to another? In what case is a substantive *in apposition* to another placed? [In the *same case as the subst. to which it stands in apposition.*]
- \*24. What case do *dignus, indignus*<sup>c</sup>, &c., govern? [*Abl.*]
- \*25. What case does the verb *to be* take after it? [The *same case as before it.*]
- \*26. What case do the compounds of *esse* govern? [The *dat.*] What exception is there? [*Possum.*]

<sup>a</sup> The manner of declining the other adjectives of the *third* is explained at p. 112.

<sup>b</sup> How may the *imperative* be got from the *infinitive*? [By *throwing away* *re.*]

<sup>c</sup> The ablative after *dignus, indignus*, must be Englished by 'of:' after all of them consider what preposition we should naturally use in English, and *use* that, without thinking about the usual *signs* of the ablative.

- \*27. What does the *English infinitive* often express, but the Latin infinitive *never*? [*A purpose.*]
- \*28. How may the English infinitive expressing a *purpose* be translated? [By *ut* with the *subjunctive*: of which the *imperfect* follows the past tenses; the *present*, the other tenses.]
29. What tense is, 'he is come'? [*Perf.*] What tense is, 'he was come'? [*Plap.*] With what auxiliary do neuter verbs of motion form their *perfect definite*?
30. How is the *subjunctive present*, standing in a principal sentence, to be translated? [As an *imperative*, or to express a *wish*. Veniat = *let him come*; or *may he come.*]
- (a) How must the *perfect* be construed, when it is followed by the *subjunctive present*? [*By the perf. definite.*]
- \*31. When is the English *indicative* after 'that' to be translated by the *Latin subjunctive* governed by *ut*? [When *that* follows so or *such*.—It then introduces a *consequence*.]
- \*32. What tenses of the *subjunctive* are the *regular attendants* of the *past tenses* of the *indicative*? [*The imperf. and pluperf.*]
- \*33. When is 'to' never a sign of the dative? [After verbs of *motion*: *come, send, fetch, &c.*] \*How is the place to which translated? (By *Acc.*) \*How is the place from which translated? (By the *Abl.*) When must *ad*, 'to,' be expressed? (*Ans.* When the place is not the name of a *town* or *small island*; and when the motion is to a *person*.)
- \*34. How is the *supine* in *um* used? (*Ans.* after verbs of *motion*.) How is the *sup.* in *un* Englished? (*Ans.* by the *inf. acc.*) How is the *sup.* in *u* used? (*Ans.* After some adjectives, such as *hard, disgraceful, pleasant, best, &c.*) How is the *sup.* in *u* Englished? (*Ans.* Regularly by the *inf. passive*: but often by the *inf. active*.)
- \*35. How is the want of the *perfect participle* † *active* supplied? (*Ans.* By *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf.* of the *subjunctive*; or by the *abl. absolute*.)
- \*36. What is the *ablative absolute*? \*Is the substantive of the *abl. absol.* to be construed by a *preposition*? [No.] \*By what participle governing its noun may the *ablative absolute* often be construed, when the participle is of the *perf. pass.*? [By the *partic.* with 'having.']
- \*37. What substantives follow the rules for the proper names of towns? [*Ans.* *Domus* and *rus*: also the genitives *humi* and *militiæ*. See 33.]
38. Where is 'cum' placed with the *ablatives* of personal pronouns? [After them and joined to them: *mecum, &c.*]
- \*39. What case do adjectives signifying *desire, &c.* govern? [*Gen.*]
- \*41. In what case is the *agent* or *person by whom* put? (*Ans.* In the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*: but after the *part.* in *dus*, in the *dative*.)
42. Mention some words, &c., after which the *gerund* or *part.* in

† What English participle answers to the *partic.* in *ns*? [*Part.* in *ng.*] in *us*? [*Part.* in *d, t, or n.*] *rus*? [*Going to—*; or, *about to—*] in *ndus*? [*Form of inf. pass.*]

- dus* follows in the *dat.* [Utilis, profitable or good for; inutilis, unprofitable; idoneus, fit for; tempus impendere, to spend time in or on; vacare, to have leisure; studere, aim at; devote oneself to.]
- \*13. How is what is in *form* the *pass. infin.* to be translated after 'is,' 'are'? [Ans. By the part. in *dus*.]
- \*14. What verbs govern the dative? (191.) \*How is the *pluperf. indic.* to be translated after 'if'? [By *plup. subj.*]
45. In the infinitives made up of two words, is the participle to agree with its substantive or not? (Ans. To agree.) Is the form in *um* in the *fut. infin. pass.* a participle? What is it? [Supine.]  
Can it then agree with the substantive? [No.]
- \*16. Must you look for the *antecedent* to the relative in the relative sentence or not? [Generally not.] \*Is the *case* of the relative determined by a word in its own, or in the preceding sentence? (236.)
47. Can the verbs that govern the *dative* be used in the *first* or *second* persons in the passive? In what person only can they be used in the passive? [In the third sing.]
48. How is the present *infin.* construed after *licuit?* oportuit? [Generally by the *perf.*]
- \*49. What verbs govern the *gen.*? (244.)
- \*50. \_\_\_\_\_ *abl.*? (221, 245.)
- \*51. What cases do *pœnitent, pudet, &c.*, take after them? (Ans. An *accusative* of the person, *feeling*; a *gen.* of the thing or person about which the emotion is felt.)
- \*52. How is 'must' translated? [By the part. in *dus* with the verb *esse*.] When is the part. in *dus* to agree with the subst. †? [When the verb governs the *accusative*.] When the verb does not govern the *acc.*, in what case, &c. must the participle stand? [In the *nom. neut.*, and then *esse* will always stand in the third singular.]

Go through *prodesse* (129, p. 44).

\_\_\_\_\_ *occidere, killing* (175, p. 58).

\_\_\_\_\_ *epistola scribenda* (181, p. 59).

\_\_\_\_\_ *scribendum est mihi* (207, p. 67).

\_\_\_\_\_ *mihi creditur* (237, p. 77).

\_\_\_\_\_ *mihi ire licet* (261, p. 83).

\_\_\_\_\_ *me ire oportet* (269, p. 85).

Mention the participles of *loquor* (242, p. 78) ‡.

† The subst., that is, which is governed by the verb that follows *must*. The *nom.* before *must* becomes the *dat.* after *esse*, but is often omitted.

‡ The *fut. inf.* of a deponent verb is the *fut. in rus* with *esse*.

## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

N.B. These differences are referred to in the Exercises by a numeral above the line.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. To think <i>nothing of</i> .	To reckon <i>at nothing</i> ( <i>nihil</i> ducere or facere).
2. To value <i>highly</i> <sup>a</sup> .	To value <i>at a high price</i> ( <i>magni aestimare</i> ).
3. { To think <i>little of</i> <sup>b</sup> . { To hold <i>cheap</i> .	To value <i>at a little price</i> ( <i>parvi aestimare</i> ).
4. <i>No stability</i> .	<i>Nothing of stability</i> ( <i>nihil stabilitatis</i> ).
<i>Some time</i> .	<i>Something of time</i> ( <i>aliquid temporis</i> ).
<i>Much good</i> .	<i>Rich of good</i> ( <i>multum boni</i> ).
<i>How much pleasure</i> .	<i>How much of pleasure</i> ( <i>quantum voluptatis</i> ).
<p>☞ Hence 'no,' 'some,' (when they denote <i>quantity</i>, not <i>number</i>), 'much,' 'how much,' are to be translated by 'nihil,' 'aliquid,' 'multum,' 'quantum,' followed by the <i>genitive</i>.</p>	
5. He did it <i>unwillingly</i> .	He <i>unwilling</i> did it.
6. <i>It</i> is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful.
7. <i>It</i> is the <i>part</i>	} of a wise } man. }
— <i>duty</i>	
— <i>business</i>	
— <i>mark</i>	
— <i>character</i>	
8. To condemn a man <i>to death</i> .	To condemn a man <i>of the head</i> .

<sup>a</sup> To value *very highly* (*maximi aestimare*).

<sup>b</sup> The thing valued will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the 'of,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

- | ENGLISH.  | LATIN.   |
|---|--|
| 9. As many as <i>possible</i> .<br>As many as <i>he can or could</i> .<br>The greatest <i>possible</i> .<br>The greatest <i>he can or could</i> . | <i>As the most (quam plurimi).</i><br><i>As the greatest (quam maximus).</i><br>[That is, 'as many as the most,'<br>'as great as the greatest,' &c.]   |
| 10. On the <i>top of</i> the mountain.<br>In the <i>middle of</i> the water.  | On the mountain <i>highest</i> (in <i>summo monte</i> ).<br>In the water <i>middle</i> (in <i>mediâ aquâ</i> ).  |
| 11. Is going to bed.  | Is going to <i>lie down (cubitum)</i> ;<br>supine.   |
| 12. It is hard to <i>say</i> .  | It is hard <i>in saying</i> ( <i>difficile est dictu</i> ) ; supine.   |
| 13. <i>Whilst</i> they were (are, &c.)<br>playing.  | During playing ( <i>inter ludendum</i> ).  |
| 14. The intention of <i>writing a letter</i> .  | The intention of a <i>letter to-be-written</i> ( <i>scribendæ epistolæ</i> ).  |
| 15. <i>We must cultivate</i> virtue.  | <i>Virtue is to-be-cultivated</i> ( <i>colenda est virtus</i> ).   |
| 16. <i>Caius must write</i> .   | <i>It is to-be-written by Caius</i><br>( <i>Caius scribendum est</i> ).  |
| 17. <i>We must believe Caius</i> .  | <i>It is to-be-believed to Caius</i> *<br>( <i>credendum est Caius</i> ).  |
| 18. The ways of expressing the<br><i>purpose</i> are,<br>He comes to <i>see</i> the games.<br>(He comes <i>in order to see</i> ),<br>&c.          | { (a) <i>Venit ut ludos spectet.</i><br>(b) <i>Venit ludos spectatum</i> (supine).<br>(c) <i>Venit ludos spectaturus.</i><br>(d) <i>Venit ad ludos spectandos.</i><br>To which add,<br>(e) <i>Venit causâ</i> (for the purpose) <i>ludorum spectandorum</i> ; and<br>(f) Instead of <i>ut</i> , the relative may be used :<br>He sent ambassadors, <i>qui pacem petèrent</i> (to sue for peace). |
| 19. (a) I may go.<br>(b) I might <i>have gone</i> .   | Mihi ire licet ( <i>it is permitted to me to go</i> ).<br>Mihi ire licuit ( <i>it was permitted to me to go</i> ).   |
| 20. (a) I ought to go.<br>(b) I ought to have gone.   | Me ire oportet.<br>Me ire oportuit.  |

\* It is to be believed, or trusted (by us) ; that is, we are to trust Caius.

# INDEX I.

## ENGLISH.

N.B. Throughout these vocabularies, the figures refer to the sections, and not to the pages, in the body of the book, unless the letter *p* is prefixed, when the reference is to the page.

[For the prepositions that always govern the abl. see p. 128, 30 ; for prepositions governing acc., 255, 265.]

- ABOUT, circa, circum (prep.).  
 about the same time, sub idem tempus.  
 above, super, supra (prep.).  
 accident, casus, G. ūs. By accident, casu.  
 according to, secundum (prep.).  
 account of (on), ob, propter (prep.).  
 across, trans (prep.).  
 accuse, to, accusare.  
 acquit, to, absolvĕre (solv, solūt).  
 after, post (prep.).  
 against, adversus : contra (prep.).  
 aim at, to, studĕre (dat. 191).  
 air, aer, aeris, *m*.  
 all, omnis ; cunctus.  
 allowed fact ; it is an —, constat.  
 allowed (it is), constat.  
 along, secundum (prep. acc.).  
 Alps, Alp-es, G. ium.  
 altar, ara.  
 always, semper.  
 amongst, inter (prep.).  
 amongst the Gauls, apud Gallos.  
 and, et ; —ac *before consonants* (except *k* sounds) : atque *before vowels or consonants* : quĕ.  
 anger, ira.  
 animal, anim-al, G. ālis.  
 answer, to, respondĕre (respondi, responsum), dat. 191.  
 any, ull-us, a, um. G. ūs.  
 Apollo, Apoll-o. G. ūis.  
 arm, brachium.  
 arms, arma, neut. plur.  
 art, ars. G. artis.  
 arrow, sagitta.
- as many as possible, quam plurimi.  
 as possible, quam *before the* superl. ass, asin-us. G. i.  
 assistance, auxilium.  
 assumed appearance, simulatio.  
 at, apud *with acc.*, or used as a sign of Genitive or Ablative (72, 73).  
 at nothing, nihilī.  
 at a great price, magni.  
 at a little price, parvi.  
 at a very great price, maxīmi.  
 Athenian, Atheniensis.  
 Athens, Athĕnæ, plur.  
 attentive, studiōsus (*gen.*).  
 avarice, avaritia.  
 avaricious, avārus (*gen.*).  
 avenge, to, vindicare.  
 avoid, to, vitare.  
 autumn, auctumnus.  
 awaken, to, excitare.
- bad, malus.  
 bad (for any *purpose*), inutilis, *dat.*  
 bake, to, coquĕre (coxi, coctum).  
 bark, cort-ex, ūeis, *m*.  
 be in trouble, to, labōrare.  
 bear, urs-us, i.  
 beast, bestia.  
 beast (of *huge* beasts), bellua.  
 because, quia.  
 becomes, fit.  
 before, prep. ante \*,  
 before, adv. antea, } 222.  
 before, conj. antĕquam,  
 beguile, to, fallĕre (felli).  
 behind, pone (prep.).

\* Sometimes adverb.

behold, to, *adspicere*; *conspicere*.  
 believe, to, *credere* (dat.), 191.  
 benefit, *beneficium*.  
 besides, *præter* (prep.).  
 best, *optimus*.  
 better, *melior*.  
 better (it is), *præstat*.  
 beyond, *præter*, *ultra* (prep.).  
 bigger, *major*.  
 bind, to, *vincere* (*vinxi*, *vinctum*).  
 bird, *avis*. G. *avis*.  
 bitter, *amarus*.  
 blame, *culpa*.  
 blind, *cæcus*.  
 blood, *sangu-is*, *inis*, m.  
 body, *corp-us*, *oris*.  
 book, *liber*. G. *libri*.  
 born, *natus* (followed by prep. *ad*).  
 both—and, *et—et*.  
 boy, *puer*. G. *pueri*.  
 break, to, *frangere* (*frēgi*, *fractum*).  
 break, to, one's word, *fidem violare*.  
 break, to, a law, *legem violare*.  
 brother, *frat-er*, *ris*.  
 bribery, *ambit-us*, *us*.  
 bridge, *pon-s*. G. *tis*, m.  
 build, to, *ædificare*.  
 build, to (of a nest), *construere*  
 (*construxi*, *constructum*).  
 burst, to, *rumpere* (*rūpi*, *ruptum*).  
 bury, to, *sepelire* (*sepultum*).  
 but, *sed*, *at*, *autem*, 302.  
 buy, to, *emere* (*ēmi*, *emptum*).  
 by (= close by), *juxta* (prep.).  
 by chance, *casu*.  
  
 call, to, *vocare*.  
 camp, *castr-a*, *orum*, pl.  
 can, *possum*. See 149\*.  
 card, to, *carpere*.  
 carry on (war), to, *gerere* (*gessi*,  
*gestum*).  
 Carthage, *Carthāg-o*, *inis*.  
 case of (in the), in (prep. abl.).  
 cause to be made, to, *faciendum*  
*cave*, *antrum*. [curare.  
 certain, *certus*.  
 chain, *vinculum*.  
 chance, by, *casu*.  
 change, to, *mutare*.

character, *mor-es*, *um*, pl.  
 chariot, *curr-us*, *us*.  
 chastise, to, *castigare*.  
 cherish, to, *fovere*.  
 Christian, *Christiānus*.  
 citizen, *civis*. G. *civis*.  
 city, *urb-s*. G. *is*.  
 cloak, *pallium*.  
 close to, *juxta* (prep. acc.).  
 clouds, *nubes*, *nub-is*, f.  
 cold, *frig-us*, *oris*.  
 colour, *col-or*, *oris*.  
 come, to, *venire* (*vēni*, *ventum*).  
 command, to, *impërare*, *dat*.  
 common (= of common occur-  
 rence), *usitatus*.  
 condemn, to, *damnare*.  
 conquer, to, *vincere* (*vici*, *victum*).  
 conquered, *victus*.  
 contented, *contentus*, *abl*.  
 contrary, *contrarius*.  
 cook, to, *coquere* (*coxi*, *coctum*).  
 cost, to, *stare* (*stēti*) [abl. of  
*price*]; used with dative of  
 person, as, it cost me, *mihi*  
*stetit*.  
 country, *patria*.  
 country, into the, *rus*.  
 country, in the, *ruri*.  
 country, from the, *rure*.  
 courageously, *fortiter*.  
 cover, to, *tegere* (*texi*, *tectum*).  
 cover (= overlay, coat with), ob-  
 ducere (*duxi*, *ductum*).  
 crime, *flagitium*.  
 crop, *seg-es*, *ētis*, f.  
 crown, *corōna*.  
 crown, to, *cingere* (*surround*).  
 cry out, to, *clamare*.  
 custom, *consuetūd-o*, *inis*.  
 customary, *usitatus*.  
  
 daily, *quotidie*.  
 dance, to, *saltare*.  
 danger, *periculum*.  
 dangerous, *periculōsus*.  
 day, *di-es*, *ci*, m.  
 dead, *mortuus*.  
 death, *mor-s*, *tis*. [damnare.  
 death, to (to condemn), *capitis*



- deceive, to, fallere (fefelli); decipere, decipio (decēpi, deceptum).
- defraud, to, fraudare (abl.).
- deprive, to, privare (abl.).
- desire, cupidit-as, ātis.
- desirous, cupidus (gen.).
- devote oneself to, to, studere (dat.), 191.
- die, mori, mortuus sum.
- difficult, difficilis.
- displease, to, displicere (dat.), 191.
- discharge, to, fungi (functus), abl.
- discover, to, detegere.
- disgraceful, turpis. [tm].
- disregard, to, negligere (lexi, lecidivide, to, dividere (divisi).
- do, to, fac-ere, io (feci, factum).
- do, agere (egi, actum).
- do good to, prodesse (profui, dat.).
- dog, can-is. G. is.
- dragon, drac-o, ōnis.
- dust, pulv-is, eris, m.
- dutiful affection, piet-as, ātis.
- duty, officium.
- dwelt, to, habitare.
- each other (after 'contrary to'), carth, terra, [inter se].
- easily, facile.
- easy, facilis.
- eat, to, edere (ēdi, ēsum).
- economy, parsimonia.
- effectual, efficax.
- elegance, elegantia.
- elephant, elephas, elephantis.
- endued with, præditus (abl.).
- enemy, host-is. G. is.
- engaged in, to be (battles, &c.), inter-esse.
- enjoy, to, frui (abl.).
- envy, to, invidere (dat. 191).
- estate, fund-us, i.
- eternal, sempiternus.
- even, etiam.
- even—not, nē quidem, 188.
- evening, vesper (abl. vesper-e ori).
- every, omnis.
- every day, quotidie.
- evil, malum.
- evil (after 'some,' 'how much,' 'no'), the gen. mali.
- example, exemplum.
- excellent, præstans.
- expense, sumptus, ūs.
- expire, to, expirare.
- face, faci-es, ei.
- fact: it is an allowed —, constat.
- faith, fid-es, ei.
- faithful, fidelis.
- fall down, to, decidere.
- father, pa-ter, tris.
- fault, culpa.
- favour, to, favere (favi, factum).
- fear, to, timere; metuere. [dat.).
- fear, met-us, ūs.
- feel, to, sentire (sensum).
- fetch water, to, aquatum, *supine*.
- fidelity, fid-es, ei.
- field, in the, militiae.
- fight, to, pugnare.
- figure, figura.
- fill, to, complere (plēvi, plētum).
- find, to, repere.
- finish, to, finire.
- firm, firmus.
- first, primus.
- fish, pisc-is, is, m.
- fit for, idoneus, dat.
- flay, deglubere.
- flock, gre-x, græg-is, m.
- flourish, to, florere.
- fly out, to, evolare.
- folly, stultitia.
- fond, cupidus (gen.).
- food, cib-us, i.
- for, before a noun of time, must not be translated. The noun must be in the acc.
- forage, to, pabulatum, *supine*.
- fores, copia, plur.
- forget, oblivisci, oblitus (gen. or fortune, fortuna. [acc.).
- found (a city), to, condere (condidi, conditum).
- fourth, quartus.
- fox, vulp-es. G. is, f.
- free, liber, libera, &c. (abl.)
- friend, amicus.
- friendship, amicitia.
- frighten, to, terrere.
- from (= out of), ex (prep.); a, frugality, parsimonia. [ab (prep.)]

entum).

dat.

n occur-

victum).

l.

coetum).

[abl. of

dative of

me, mili

ectum).

with), ob-

um).

ound).

is.

[dannare.

n), capitis

fruit, fruct-us, ūs.  
future, futur-us.

game, lus-us, ūs.  
garden, hort-us.  
garland, corōna.  
gate, porta.  
Gaul, Gall-us.  
gentle, mitis.  
German, Germānus.  
get possession of, to, potiri (po-  
tior), abl. or gen.  
gift, donum.  
girl, puella.  
give, to, dare (dēdi, dātum) : dat.  
of person; acc. of thing given.

glory, gloria.  
go, to, away, ab-ire, 161, k.  
go to bed, } cubitum ire, 161.  
go to roost, }  
go a hunting, to, venātum ire, 161.  
go, to, ire (eo). See p. 124, s.  
gold, aurum.  
good, bonus.  
good (after 'some,' 'how much,'  
'no,' &c.), boni, gen.

good for, &c., utilis, dat.  
govern, to, regere.  
government, imperium.  
grain, a, granum.  
great, magnus.  
greater, major.  
greatest, maximus : generally  
translated by summus, high-  
est, when the things spoken  
of have not really size; for  
instance, qualities of the mind.

greatest possible, the, quam maxi-  
mus.  
greatness, magnitud-o, ūnis.  
ground, on the, lumi, gen.

hang, to, over (one), imminere.  
hand, man-us, ūs.  
hand, to be at, adesse (adsum).  
harm : to do harm to, obesse, dat.  
happily, beate. [(obsum).  
happy, felix; beatus.  
have, to, habere.  
head, cap-ut, ūtis, n.  
heal, to, mederi, dat.  
hear, to, audire.

heart, cor, i.

heat, cal or,  
heavy, gravis  
hen, gallina.

her, { sua, &c., fem. of suus.  
      { ejus (gen. when it does not  
      relate to nom. of sentence).

herself (when used as a nom. with  
a noun), ipsa.

himself, ipse, a, um; G. ius, &c.  
his, suus (when relating to the  
nom. of the sentence; if it  
does not relate to the nom.  
or principal word of the sen-  
tence, it must be translated  
by the gen. ejus)

hitherto, adhuc.

hold, to, tenere (tenui).

hold cheap, to, parvi aestimare.

hold, to, one's tongue, tacere.

home, at, domi : from, domo : to,

honey, mel, mellis, n. [domum.

honour (meaning fidelity, &c.),

hope for, to, sperare. [fid-es, ei.

hornet, crabr-o, ōnis.

horse, equ-us, i.

house, domus, f.

how (before an adj.), quam.

how much, quantum.

huge, ingen-s, tis.

human, humānus.

humour, indulgere (indulsi, in-  
dultum), dat. 191.

hunting, a, venatum, supine.

hurt, nocere (dat.) : laedere, acc.

husbandman, agricola, m. [(læsi).

ignorance, ignorati-o, ōnis.

ignorant, ignārus (gen.).

illuminate, illustrare.

immense, ingen-s, tis.

impel, impellere (pūli, pulsum).

in, in (abl.).

into, in (acc.).

inclined, propensus.

increase, to (trans.), aug-ere (auxi,  
auctum).

indulge, to, indulgere (indulsi, in-  
dultum), dat. 191.

industry, industria.

injure, to, nocere, dat. 191.

injury, injuria.

intention, consilium.  
 invent, to, invēnire (vēni, ventum).  
 irritate, to, irrītare.  
 is it, est.  
 island, insūla.  
 its, suus (when relating to *nom.* of sentence: when not, ejus).  
 itself, ipse, a, *um.* G. ius.

journey, it-er, inēris, n.  
 judge, jud-ex, icis.  
 judge, to, judicare.  
 Jupiter, Jupīter. G. Jovis.

keep, to, servare.  
 king, rex, rēg-is.  
 knowledge, scientia.  
 known, it is, constat.

labour, to, labōrare.  
 labour, lab-or, ōris.  
 large, grandis.  
 laugh, to, } ridere (rīsi).  
 laugh at, }  
 law, lex, legis.  
 lead, dūcere (duxi, ductum).  
 leaf, folium.  
 learn, to, discere (didici).  
 learn, to, by heart, ediscere.  
 least, minimus.  
 legion, legi-o, ōnis.  
 less, min-or. Neut. us.  
 let *must* be untranslated, being a sign of the imperative.  
 letter, epistōla.  
 lie, mendacium.  
 life, vita.  
 light, lu-x, eis.  
 light (adj.), levis.  
 like, similis, dat.  
 like, very, simillimus.  
 lion, le-o, ōnis.  
 literature, liter-æ, arum (plur.).  
 little, parvus.  
 little, with, parvo.  
 live, to, vivere (vixi, victum).  
 long, longus.  
 lose, to, a-mittēre (mīsi, missum).  
 love, to, amare.  
 lust, libid-o, inis.

magistrate, magistrāt-us, ūs.

make, to, facere, feci, factum (facio).

man, vir, homo, 98, *note.*

many, multus.

marry, to, nubere (nupsi, nuptum), dat. 191.

Marsilles, Massilia.

master (who *teaches*), magister.

master (who *owns*), dominus.

master, to, domare (domui, domitum).

may, licet.

might, licuit. } See 259—263.

means (by means of), per (prep.).

melt, liquescere, licui.

middle of, medius (in agreement with its noun, 145).

mind, animus.

mine, meus. Voc. mas., mi.

miserable, miser.

misery, miseria.

money, pecunia.

moon, luna.

mother, māt-er, ris.

mountain, mon-s, tis, m.

mouth (of a river), ostium.

move, to, movere; *intrans.* moveri (mōvi, mōtum).

much, multus.

much (*when nom. or acc.*), multum *with gen.* 56.

*must*, to be translated by part. in dus, 207, *note f.*

my, meus, a, um.

myself (I), ipse.

nature, natūra.

natural to man, humanus.

nearer, propior.

need, to, egere (gen. or abl.).

neglect, to, negligere (neglexi, neglectum).

neither, neque or nec.

nest, nidus.

never, nunquam.

new, novus.

night, nox, noctis, f.

nightingale, luscinia.

no, nullus.

no (nihil, *nothing of*, followed by

nobody, } nem-o, inis.  
 no one, }

nor, neque or nec.  
 not (*in questions*), nonne?  
 not, non.  
 not only—but also, non solum—  
     verum etiam.  
 not yet, nondum.  
 now, nunc.

oak, quercus, ūs.  
 obey, to, parēre, dat. 191.  
 observe, to, servare: conservare.  
 ocean, oceanus, i.  
 offend against, to, violare.  
 often, sæpe.  
 old man, senex, is. *G. pl. um.*  
 old age, senectus, ūtis, f.  
 on account of, ob.  
 one, unus, a, um. *G. ius.*  
 one's, suus (*in agreement*).  
 only, see not only.  
 open, to, aperire (aperui, apertum).  
 opportunity, occasio, ōnis.  
 orator, orator, ōris.  
 order, jubere (jussi, jussum).  
 other, the, reliquus.  
 out of, extra (prep.).  
 over, super (prep.).

pain, dolor, doloris.  
 pardon, to, ignoscere (ignōvi), dat.  
 parent, parens, tis. [191].  
 part, pars, tis, f.  
 pavement, pavimentum.  
 peace, pax, cis.  
 people, populus.  
 perceive, to, sentire (sensi).  
 persuade, to, persuadere, per-  
     suasi, dat. 191.  
 physician, medicus.  
 pity, to, misereri (gen.).  
 place, to, ponere (posui, positum).  
 plant, to, serere (sevi, satum).  
 Plato, Platō, ōnis.  
 play, to, ludere (lūsi, lūsum).  
 playing, whilst they are, inter lu-  
     plicitate, jucundus. [dendum].  
 please, to, placere (dat.), 191.  
 pleasure, voluptas, tis.  
 plough, to, arare.  
 plunge (into), to, immergere  
     (mersi, mersum).  
 poet, poeta.

point out, to, monstrare.  
 poor, pauper, ēris.  
 potion, potio, ōnis.  
 power: in the power of, penes  
 praise, to, laudare. [(prep.).  
 praise, laus, dis.  
 precept, præceptum.  
 prejudicial, to be, obesse (dat.).  
 preserve, servare.  
 priest, sacerdos, ōtis.  
 prison, carcer, ēris.  
 profitable, utilis.  
 procure, to, } parare.  
 provide, to, }  
 prudence, prudentia. [sum].  
 pull down, to, evertere (verti, ver-  
     tum).  
 queen, regina.

race, genus, ēris, n.  
 raise up, to, excitare.  
 raise forces, to, comparare copias.  
 rather, I had, malo.  
 read, to, legere (lēgi, lectum).  
 receive, to, accipere (cēpi, cep-  
     tum).  
 reckon, to, ducere (duxi, ductum).  
 recollect, to, reminisci (gen. or  
 reign, to, regnare. [acc.).  
 reign, regnum.  
 relying on, fretus (abl.).  
 remain, to, manere (mansi).  
 remember, to, recordari (gen. or  
     acc.).  
 remove, to (intrans.), migrare.  
 repent, to, pœnitere; used imper-  
     sonally, pœnitent.  
 require, to, egere (gen. or abl.).  
 resist, to, resistere (stiti, dat.).  
 rest, to, quiescere (quievi, quietum).  
 retain, to, retinere.  
 return, to, redire (redeo).  
 Rhine, Rhenus.  
 Rhone, Rhodanus.  
 rightly, recte.  
 ripen, to, coquere (coxi, coctum).  
 river, flumen, ōnis, n.: amnis, is, m.  
 road, via.  
 rob, to, spoliare (abl.).  
 Roman, Romanus.  
 Rome, Roma.  
 roost, to go to, cubitum ire.

round  
 rouse  
 rule.  
 run,

sacri  
 safe,  
 salt v  
 Sard  
 Satu  
 save,  
 say,  
 scatt  
 scep  
 scien  
 sca-v  
 see,  
 seed  
 seem  
 seiz

sell,

send  
 serv  
 serv  
 shar  
 shea  
 shee  
 shep  
 sho  
 sho  
 sho

sho  
 shr  
 shu  
 side  
 side  
 silv  
 sim  
 sin  
 sin  
 ski  
 sla  
 sla

sla  
 sle  
 sli  
 slo  
 slo

round, circum, circa.  
rouse up, to, excitare.  
rule, to, regere (rexi, rectum).  
run, to, currere (eucurri, cursum).

sacrifice, to, immolare.  
safe, tutus.  
salt water, aqua marina.  
Sardis, Sard-es, ium, pl.  
Saturn, Saturnus.  
save, to, servare.  
say, to, dicere (dixi, dictum).  
scatter, to, spargere (sparsi).  
sceptre, sceptrum.  
science, scientia.  
sea-water, aqua marina.  
see, to, videre (vidi, visum).  
seed, sem-en, inis, n.  
scem, to, videre (visus sum).  
seize, arripere, io (arripui, arrep-  
tum).

sell, to, vendere (vendidi, vendi-  
tum).  
send, to, mittere (misi, missum).  
serviceable, to be, prodesse, profui,  
service, on, militia. [dat.]  
sharpen, to, acuire (acui, acutum).  
shear, to, tondere (totondi, ton-  
sheep, ov-is, f. [sum].  
shepherd, past-or, oris.  
shore, litt-us, oris, n.  
short, brevis.  
should, to be translated by part.  
in dus. See 184—186.

show, to, monstrare.  
shrub, frutex, frutie-is, f.  
shut, to, claudere (clausi).  
side, on this, cis (prep.).  
side, latus, later-is, n.  
silver, argent-um.  
simple, simpl-ex, icis.  
sin, to, peccare.  
sing, to, cantare: canere (cēcūni,  
skilful, peritus, gen. [cantum].  
slave, serv-us, i.  
slave; to be the slave of, servire,  
dat.  
slay, to, occidere (occidi, occisum).  
sleep, to, dormire.  
slip away, to, elabi, elapsus.  
sloth, ignavia.  
slothful, ignāvus.

slow, tardus.  
small, parvus.  
snake, angu-is, is, m.  
snatch, to, ar-ripere, io (ripui,  
snow, ni-x, vis. [reptum].  
Socrates, Socrāt-es, is.  
some (= some of), aliquid with gen.  
some, aliquid: pl. nonnulli.  
some time or other, aliquando.  
something, aliquid.  
son, fili-us, i. V. fili.  
soon, cito.  
sorrow, dol-or, oris.  
sound, son-us, i.  
sow, to, serere (sevi, satum).  
space-of-two-years, biennium.  
space-of-three-years, triennium.  
spare, to, parere (peperci), dat.  
speak, to, loqui, locutus. [191].  
spend time, to, impendere, dat.  
spring, ver, veris, n.  
sprinkle, to, adspargere, adpersi.  
stability, stabilita-s, tis.  
stand, to, stare (steti).  
star, stella.  
state, civita-s, tis. [oris].  
strength, vir-es, ium, pl., rob-ur,  
succour, to, succurrere, dat.  
sum-of-money, pecunia.  
summer, aesta-s, tis.  
sun, sol, solis, m.  
superfluous, supervacuus.  
surround, to, cingere (cixi, cinc-  
swear, to, jurare. [tum].  
sweet, dulcis.  
swift, vel-ox, ocis.  
swim, to, natare.

tame, to, domare (domui, domi-  
teach, to, docere. [tum].  
tear to pieces, to, dilaniare.  
temple, templum.  
than, quam, or, sign of the abl. of  
the noun following, the word  
'than' not being expressed in  
the Latin.  
that. Conjunction, ut, with sub-  
junctive mood: after compar-  
atives, quo, 284.  
theft, furtum.  
their, suus (if it relates to nom. of  
sentence: if not, eorum).

there, *ibi*.  
 think, to, *putare*.  
 think little of, to, *parvi aestimare*.  
 threaten, to, *minari*, acc. *of thing* ;  
     *dat. of person threatened*.  
 three, *tres, tria, &c.*  
 through, *per* (prep.).  
 time, *temp-us, ōris*.  
 timid, *timidus*.  
 to, *ad* (prep.), or, sign of dative.  
 top of, *summus* (*in agreement*. See  
     144, 145).  
 towards, { *erga* ; sometimes adverb-  
             *sus*.  
             *in*.  
 town, *urb-s, is*.  
 treachery, *proditio, ōnis*.  
 tree, *arb-or, ōris, f*.  
 true, *verus*.  
 truth, *verum*, *neut. adj. used as*  
 twice, *bis*. [ *subst.*

*umpire, arbit-er, ri*.  
 uncertain, *incertus*.  
 uncover, to, *aperire* (*aperui, aper-*  
     *tum*).  
 understand, to, *intel-igere* (*lexi,*  
     *lectum*).  
 undertake, to, *suscipio, sus-cipere*  
     (*eēpi, ceptum*).  
 unlearned, *indoctus*.  
 unnecessary, *supervacuus*.  
 unprofitable, *inutilis*.  
 unworthy, *indignus* (*abl.*).  
 unwilling, *invitus*.  
 unwillingly, *invitus*. See 55.  
 upright, *honestus*.  
 use, to, *uti, usus sum, abl.*  
 useful, *utilis*.  
 useless, *inutilis*.

value, to, *aestimare*.  
 value more highly, to, *pluris facere*.  
 vapour, *vap-or, ōris*.  
 verse, *versus, ūs*.  
 very great, *maximus*.  
 very highly, *maximi* (*gen.*).  
 very many, *plurim-i, æ, a*.  
 very fond, *studiōsus* (*gen.*).  
 very, *sign of superlative*.  
 vice, *viti-ura*.  
 victim, *victima*.

victory, *victoria*.  
 virtue, *virtū-s, tis*.  
 virtuous, *honestus*.  
 virtuously, *honeste*.  
 voice, *vox, vōcis*.

wage, to, *gerere* (*gessi, gestum*).  
 walk, to, *ambulare*.  
 wall, *mur-us, i*.  
 want, to (= to be without), *carere*,  
 war, *bellum*. [ *abl.*  
 wasp, *vespa*.  
 water, *aqua*.  
 way, *via*.  
 wealth, *op-es, um*.  
 well, *recte* (= rightly).  
 white, *candidus*.  
 wholesome, *saluber, salubris, sa-*  
     *lubre* (*saluber only for nom.*  
 wicked, *improbus*. [ *masc.*]  
 wickedness, *malitia*.  
 wine, *vinum*.  
 wing, *penna*.  
 winter, *hiem-s, hiemis, f*.  
 wisdom, *sapientia*.  
 wise, *sapien-s, tis*.  
 with, *eum* (prep.).  
 with me (*after to sup, dative, &c.*),  
     *apud me*.  
 within, *intra* (prep.).  
 without (= on the outside of),  
     *extra* (prep.).  
 without, to be, *carere, abl.*  
 without one's knowledge, *clam*.  
 wolf, *lup-us, i*.  
 word, *verbum*.  
 word (*when it means promise*),  
     *fides, ei* ; to keep one's pro-  
     mise, *servare fidem*.  
 worse, *pejor*.  
 worst, *pessimus*.  
 worthy, *dignus, abl.*  
 write, to, *scribere* (*scripsi, scrip-*  
 wrong, to, *violare*. [ *tum*].

year, *annus*.  
 you yourself, *ipse*, with second  
     person of verb.  
 young (bird), *pullus*.  
 your, yours, if used of one person,  
     *tuus* ; if used of more than one,  
     *vest-er, ra, rum*.

# INDEX II.

## LATIN.

To find the root of the *present* from the root of the *perfect*, we must remember how the root of the perfect was formed.

- a) Thus if *āv*, *īv*, *uv* precede 'it' or any other termination of the tenses that have the root of the *perfect*, we get the root of the present by throwing them away. But sometimes *u* is to be retained.
- b) We must remember that *x* is made up of *cs*, or *gs*, or *qus*: and therefore the root of the *present* ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu*: sometimes, however, in *v*, *h*, or the vowel that precedes *x*.

[*duxi, texi, coxi*, from *duco, tego, coquo*,  
*vixi, vexi, struxi*, from *vivo, veho, struo*.]

- c) We must remember that *ps* may be made up of *bs*: so that the root of the present may end in *b*; not necessarily in *p*.  
(scrips-it = scrib-sit: root scrib.)

- d) Sometimes an *n* or *m* must be inserted before the consonant preceding 'it,' to give the root of the present.

(vīc-it; root vīc: rūp-it; root rump.)

- e) Sometimes *ē* must be turned into *ā*, to get the root of the present.

(jēc-it; root jac.)

- f) Before *s*, a 'd' has often been thrown away.

(clausi = claud-si; root claud.)

- g) An *s* before *s* is a 'b,' 'd,' or 'r' in the present.

(jussi, cessi, gessi, from *jub-eo, ced-e, ger-o*.)

[123] When in this index a verb is followed by *io*, the meaning is that the first person of the pres. ends in *io*.]

A, ab, abs, *from, by*.

abire, *to go away (from ab-co<sup>1</sup>)*.

absolvēre (absolvi, absolutum), *to acquit*.

ab-sumēre, *to take away, destroy*.

ac, *and*.

accidēre (eidi), *to happen*.

accipēre, *io, to receive*.

accusare, *to accuse*.

acuēre, *to sharpen*.

ad, *to*.

adeo, *so*.

adeptus, *see adipiscor*.

ad-esse, *to be present, or at hand*.

ad-ferre (*fero*, irreg. verb, p. 123), *to bring*.

adhuc, *hitherto, yet*.

adipisci (adeptus sum), *to gain, to adjumentum, help*.

ad-jūvare (adjūvi, adjūtum), *to help*.

ad-monēre (monui, monitum), *to admonish, remind*.

ad-olēscēre, *to grow up, to grow*.

adspēct-us, ūs, *look, appearance*.

adspicēre, *io (spexi, spectrum), to behold*.

adulator, *a flatterer*.

advectus, *see advehere*.

ad-vēhēre (vexi, vectum), *to bring*.

adversus, *towards*.

aedificare, *to build*.

<sup>1</sup> See conjug. of *co*, infin. *ire*, 161, note *k*, and Irreg. Verbs, p. 123.

aegrôtus, *sick*.  
 Ægypt-us, *i, Egypt*.  
 æqualis (adj.), *of the same age*.  
 æquitas, *equity; justice*.  
 æstimare, *to value*.  
 æsta-s, tis, *summer*.  
 æta-s, atis, *time of life; age; life*.  
 afficere, *io: pœnâ afficere, to visit with punishment*.  
 affirmare, *to affirm*.  
 ag-er, ri, *field; territory*.  
 agere, *to do (ægi, actum)*.  
 agricôla, *husbandman*.  
 alere (alui, altum), *to nourish; support*.  
 aliquando, *some time or other*.  
 aliquis (p. 122, g), *some; some one*.  
 aliquid (neut.), *something; some*.  
 Before a *genitive* it is to be translated by *some*, and the *genitive* not to have the sign 'of.'  
 alius, a, ud (G. alius), *other, another*.  
 Alp-es, G. ium, *the Alps*.  
 alterûter, *the one or the other; one of the two*.  
 amare, *to love*.  
 amârus, *bitter*.  
 ambit-us, ūs, *bribery*.  
 ambulare, *to walk*.  
 amicitia, *friendship*.  
 amic-us, i, *friend*.  
 amittere (amisi, amissum), *to lose*.  
 amn-is, is, *a river*.  
 amor, *love*.  
 amphibium, *an amphibious animal*.  
 an-as, âtis, *duck*.  
 anguis, *a snake*.  
 animal, G. âlis, *an animal*.  
 anim-us, i, *the mind*.  
 annus, *year*.  
 ante, *before (prep.)*.  
 antea, *before (adv.)*.  
 antequam, *before (conjunct.)*.  
 ante-fêro, *I prefer*.  
 antrum, *cave*.  
 an-us, -ûs, *old woman*.  
 aperire (aperui, apertum), *to open; uncover*.  
 Apell-es, is, *Apelles*.  
 Apoll-o, G. ïnis, *Apollo*.

apud, *at; amongst*.  
 aqua, *water*.  
 aquamarina, *sea-water; salt water*.  
 ara, *altar*.  
 arare, *to plough*.  
 arb-or, ôris, *f. tree*.  
 argentum, *silver*.  
 Aristides, *Aristides, a noble Athenian, famed for his justice*.  
 arma (pl.), *arms*.  
 arripere, *io (arripui, arreptum), to seize upon; snatch*.  
 ar-s, tis, *art*.  
 artificium, *an artifice*.  
 ascendere, *to ascend; climb*.  
 asin-us, i, *ass*.  
 at, *but*.  
 Athênæ (noun plur.), *Athens*.  
 Atheniensis, *an Athenian*.  
 atque, *and*.  
 atqui, *but or now, 302*.  
 auctoritas, *authority; influence*.  
 auctumn-us, i, *autumn*.  
 audacia, *boldness*.  
 audax, audâcis, *bold; overbold*.  
 audere, *to dare (ausus sum)*.  
 audire, *to hear*.  
 augere (auxi, auctum), *to increase*.  
 aureus, *adj. of gold*.  
 aurum, *gold*.  
 aut, *either, or*.  
 auxilium, *help, aid*.  
 avaritia, *avarice*.  
 avârus, *greedy; avaricious*.  
 avis, *a bird*.  
 barbârus, *barbarous*.  
 beate, *happily*.  
 beatus, *happy*.  
 bellua, *beast*.  
 bellum, *war*.  
 bene, *well*.  
 beneficium, *benefit*.  
 beneficus, *beneficent; bountiful*.  
 bestia, *a beast*.  
 bibere (bibi, bibitum), *to drink*.  
 biennium, *the space of two years; two years*.  
 bis, *twice*.  
 bonitas, *goodness*.  
 bonus, *good*.  
 brachium, *arm*.



- brevis, *short*.  
brut-us, a, um, *brute*.
- cæcus, *blind*.  
cædère (cecidi, cæsum), *to slay*.  
calidior, *warmer*.  
calor, *heat*.  
candidus, *white*.  
canère (cecini, cantum), *to sing*.  
can-is, G. is, *dog*.  
cantare, *to sing*.  
cant-us, ūs, *the singing*.  
cap-ère, -io (cēpi, captum), *to take; to seize*.  
capitis, *of the head = to death*.  
capra, *she-goat*.  
cap-ut, itis, *head*.  
carc-er, ēris, *prison*.  
carère, *to be without (abl.); to do without; to want*.  
carpère, *to pluck; card; carp at*.  
Carthāg-o, inis, *Carthage*.  
castigare, *to chastise*.  
castr-a, -orum (pl.), *a camp*.  
casu, *by chance*.  
cas-us, ūs, *accident*.  
catūlus, *cat, puppy*.  
cavē (imperat. of caveo), *take care*.  
celeriter, *quickly*.  
celsus, *high, tall*.  
cēpi, *see capere*.  
cera, *wax*.  
certāmen, *contest*.  
certus, *certain; sure*.  
cervus, *a stag*.  
christianus, *christian:—a christian*.  
cib-us, i, *food*.  
cingère (cinxi, cinctum), *to surround*.  
circa, } *about*.  
circum, }  
circum-linere (levi, litum), *to smear round; anoint; cover*.  
circum-spicère, io (spexi, spectum), *to look around*.  
cis, } *on this side of*.  
citra, }  
cito, *quickly*.  
civ-is, is, *a citizen*.
- civit-as, ātis, *a city; state*.  
clam, *without the knowledge of (prep. abl.)*.  
clamare, *to cry out*.  
claudère (clausi), *to shut*.  
coact-, *see cogere*.  
cælum, *heaven; the sky*.  
cæna, *dinner*.  
cōgère (coegi, coactum), *to compel*.  
cogitare, *to consider*.  
cognitio, *knowledge*.  
cognitus, *known*.  
colère (colui, cultum), *to cultivate*.  
collineare, *to hit the mark*.  
col-or, ōris, *colour*.  
committere (commisi, commissum), *to entrust*.  
commōdum, *advantage*.  
commorari, *to delay; to remain*.  
comparare, *to raise (forces)*.  
compellare, *to call*.  
complere (plevi, plētum), *to fill*.  
comprehendere (prehendi, prehensum), *to seize*.  
concio, onis, *f. assembly*.  
conclav-c, is, *a room, n.*  
con-cordia, *concord*.  
condere (condidi, conditum), *to build; found; bury*.  
confēro \*, *I carry (together); confēro culpam, I throw the blame*.  
conferre se, *to betake themselves*.  
confidere, *to feel confident*.  
con-fitēri (fessus sum), *to confess*.  
confusus (partic. of confundere), *confused*.  
conservare, *to observe (duties)*.  
consilium, *intention, design*.  
consolatio, *consolation*.  
conspect-us, ūs, *sight*.  
conspicere, io (spexi, spectum), *to behold*.  
constat, *it is an allowed fact; it is known*.  
con-stituere (stitui, stitutum), *to settle*.  
construere (struxi, structum), *construct, build (a nest)*.  
consuetud-o, inis, *custom*.

\* *Sec fero*, irreg. verb, p. 123.

consulat-us, ūs, *consulship*.  
 consulēre (sului, sultum), *to consult*.  
 coniect, *see contegere*.  
 contegēre (texi, tectum), *to cover*.  
 con-temnēre (temp̄si, temptum), *to despise*.  
 contemplari, *to look at*.  
 contendēre, *to contend, to strive*.  
 contentus, *contented (ab.)*.  
 contra, *against*.  
 contrarius, *contrary*.  
 coquēre (coxi, coctum), *to cook; bake; ripen*.  
 copi-æ, arum, plur. *forces*.  
 cor, cordis, *heart*.  
 coram, *before*.  
 Corinthus, *Corinth*.  
 cornu, n. *horn*.  
 corōna, ero.n; *garland*.  
 corp-us, ōris, *body*.  
 cor-rigēre, *to correct*.  
 cor-rumpēre, *to corrupt*.  
 cort-ex, icis, *bark*.  
 crabro, *hornet*.  
 crastīnus, a, um, *to-morrow's; crastinus dies, to-morrow*.  
 credēre (credīdi, creditum), *to believe*.  
 cremare, *to burn*.  
 crescēre (crevi, cretum), *to grow*.  
 cubitum (ire), *to go to bed; to roost*.  
 culpa, *fault*.  
 cult-or, ōris, *a cultivator*.  
 cunctatio, *delay*.  
 cuncti, *all*.  
 cunctus (with snb.), *the whole*.  
 cupidit-as, ātis, *desire*.  
 cupidus, *desirous*.  
 cupēre, io (cupivi, cupitum), *to desire; wish*.  
 curare, *to take care*.  
 currēre (cucurri, cursum), *to run*.  
 curr-us, ūs, *a chariot*.  
 damnare, *to condemn*.  
 dāre (dēdi, dātum), *to give*.  
 de, *from; concerning*.  
 dealbatus, *whitewashed*.  
 debēre, *to owe*.

decerpēre (cerpsi, cerptum), *to pluck*.  
 decidēre, *to fall off*.  
 decipēre, io (cēpi, ceptum), *to deceive*.  
 declarare, *to declare*.  
 de-esse, *to be wanting*.  
 degēre, *to live*.  
 deglūb-ēre (glupsi, gluptum), *to flay*.  
 deleo (delēvi, delētum), *to destroy*.  
 delinquēre, *to transgress*.  
 delirus, *crazy*.  
 deme-ns, ntis, *mad*.  
 descendēre, *to come down*.  
 detēgēre (texi, tectum), *to discover*.  
 de-terrēre, *to deter*.  
 Deus, *God*.  
 de-vincēre (vīci, victum), *to conquer*.  
 dicēre (dixi, dictum), *to say; speak\**.  
 dictator, *dictator (a high office at Rome)*.  
 di-es, ei, *day*.  
 difficilis, *difficult*.  
 diffidēre, *to distrust (dat.)*.  
 dignitas, *dignity*.  
 dignus, *worthy (abl.)*.  
 dilaniare, *to tear to pieces*.  
 discēre (didici), *to learn*.  
 disciplina, *discipline; teaching*.  
 discrepare, *to be different*.  
 dis-jungēre (junxi, junctum), *to separate*.  
 displicēre, *to displease (dat.)*.  
 dis-ponēre (posui, positum), *to arrange*.  
 diu, *long; for a long time*.  
 diutius, *longer*.  
 dividere (visi, vīsum), *to divide*.  
 divinitas, *divinity; divine origin*.  
 divinus, *divine*.  
 diviti-æ, arum, *riches*.  
 dōcēre, *to teach*.  
 dol-or, oris, *pain; grief*.  
 domare (domui, domitum), *to tame; master*.  
 domi, *at home*.  
 domīn-us, i, *master*.

\* This word drops *e* from the imperative: *dic*.

- domo, *from home.*  
 domum, *home, to or towards (acc.).*  
 domus, *house.*  
 donare, *to bestow.*  
 donum, *gift.*  
 dormire, *to sleep.*  
 dubitare, *to doubt.*  
 ducere (duxi, ductum), *to lead;*  
*reckon.*  
 dulcis, *sweet.*  
 duo, *two.*  
 duodēcim, *twelve.*  
 durare, *to last.*
- e, ex, *of; from; out of.*  
 e-i; e-o, &c. *See is, ea, id, p. 121.*  
 ēdere (ēdi, ēsum), *to eat.*  
 edicere (dixi, dictum), *to make a*  
*proclamation.*  
 effectus. *See efficere.*  
 efficax, *effectual.*  
 efficere, feci, fectum, *to accomplish.*  
 effugere, *to escape, avoid.*  
 ēgi. *See agere.*  
 ego, *I (116).*  
 egere (gen. or abl.), *to need.*  
 egressus, *partic. of egrēdi, to go*  
*out.*  
 e-lābi (lapsus sum), *to slip away.*  
 elegantia, *elegance.*  
 eleph-as, antis, *elephant.*  
 eligere, *to choose.*  
 emendare, *to correct.*  
 emere (ēmi, emtum or emptum),  
*to buy.*  
 eniti, *to strive.*  
 ens-is, is, *sword.*  
 Epaminondas, *a Theban general.*  
 epistōla, *a letter.*  
 eques, equitis, *horseman.*  
 equ-us, i, *horse.*  
 erectus, *raised up; erect.*  
 erga, *towards (acc.).*  
 eripere (erip-io, ui), *to snatch out.*  
 error, *an error; a mistake.*  
 erumpere (erupi, eruptum), *to*  
*break out.*  
 esto, *imperat. of esse, p. 120.*  
 esurire, *to be hungry.*  
 et, *and; both; even.*  
 etiam, *even; also.*  
 etiamatque etiam, *again and again.*
- evectus, *partic. of evehere, to*  
*raise,*  
 evertere (verti, versum), *to over-*  
*throw, pull down.*  
 evolare, *to fly out of.*  
 ex, *out of; from (abl.).*  
 excellere, *excel.*  
 excitare, *rouse up; awaken.*  
 excruciare, *to torment.*  
 exemplum, *an example.*  
 exercere, *to exercise; practise.*  
 exercit-us, ūs, *army.*  
 exiguus, *small.*  
 ex-ire (ex-eo), *to go out, p. 121.*  
 existimare, *to think.*  
 expellere (pūli, pulsum), *to drive*  
*out; banish.*  
 expugnare, *to carry by assault (a*  
*town, &c.).*  
 exspectare, *to expect; wait for.*  
 exspirare, *to expire.*  
 externus, *external.*  
 extimescere, *to dread.*  
 extra, *without.*
- faba, *a bean.*  
 fabulosus, *fabulous.*  
 fac-ere, io (fēci, factum), *to do; to*  
*make; imperat. fac, not face.*  
 faci-es, ei, *face.*  
 facilis, *easy; facile, easily.*  
 fallere (fefelli), *to deceive; break*  
*(one's word, &c.).*  
 fam-es, is, *hunger; famine.*  
 familiarit-as, ātis, *intimacy.*  
 fatēri (fessus sum), *to confess,*  
*own.*  
 fatigare, *to fatigue.*  
 fāvere (fāvi, fautum), *to favour*  
*(dat.).*  
 febr-is (abl. i), *fever.*  
 feci, *see facere.*  
 felicitas, ātis, *happiness.*  
 fel-ix, icis, *happy.*  
 fere, *nearly, almost: nemo iere,*  
*hardly any body.*  
 fero. *See ferre.*  
 ferox, *savage.*  
 ferre (p. 123), *to bear.*  
 fidelis, *faithful.*  
 fid-es, ei, *faith; fidelity; one's*  
*word.*

- fieri (factus sum, p. 123), *to be come; to be made.*  
 figurā, *figure.*  
 fili-a, æ, *daughter.*  
 fili-us, i, *son. Voc. fili.*  
 finire, *to finish.*  
 firmus, *firm.*  
 fit, *becomes: from fio, p. 123.*  
 flagitare, *to demand; to call for (with importunity).*  
 flagitium, *crime.*  
 flo-s, ris, *flower.*  
 florere, *to bloom; to flourish.*  
 flum-en, inis, *river, n.*  
 folium, *leaf.*  
 fon-s, ntis, *m. fountain.*  
 fore, *from esse, p. 120.*  
 forma, *shape.*  
 formica, *an ant.*  
 fortiter, *courageously.*  
 fortuna, *fortune.*  
 fovere (fovi, fōtum), *to cherish.*  
 frangere (frēgi, frāctum), *to break.*  
 frat-er, ris, *brother.*  
 fratricida, *a fratricide.*  
 fraudare, *to defraud.*  
 fretus, *relying on, abl.*  
 frigidus, *adj. cold.*  
 frig-us, ōris, *cold, n.*  
 fruct-us, ūs, *fruit.*  
 frui, *to enjoy, abl.*  
 frumentum, *corn.*  
 frut-ex, icis, *shrub.*  
 fui, *perf. of esse, p. 120.*  
 fund-us, i, *estate; farm.*  
 fungi (functus), *to discharge, abl.*  
 furere, *to be mad.*  
 furtum, *theft.*  
 futūrus, *about to be (partic. of esse); future, p. 120.*  
  
 gallina, *hen.*  
 Gallus, *a Gaul.*  
 garrulus, *talkative; chattering.*  
 gen-us, ōris, *race, kind, n.*  
 gerere (gessi, gestum), *to carry on; wage.*  
 gloria, *glory.*  
 grandinare, *to hail.*  
 grandis, *large.*  
  
 granum, *a grain.*  
 gratia, *favour, kindness, gratitude.*  
 gratus, *agreeable.*  
 gravis, *heavy.*  
 grex, grēgis (m.), *flock.*  
 gru-s, is, *crane.*  
  
 habere, *to have\*; to consider.*  
 haberi, *to be considered.*  
 habitare, *to dwell; live.*  
 haurire, *to swallow.*  
 herba, *herb.*  
 hiem-s, hiēm̄is, *winter.*  
 hic, hæc, hoc, *this, p. 121.*  
 hic (adv.), *here.*  
 hinc, *hence.*  
 Homerus, *Homer (a Greek poet).*  
 homo, inis, *man.*  
 honeste, *virtuously.*  
 honestus, *honorable; virtuous.*  
 hon-or, ōris, *honour.*  
 hortari, *to exhort.*  
 hort-us, i, *garden.*  
 hostis, *enemy.*  
 humanus, *natural to man; human.*  
 humi, *on the ground.*  
  
 ibi, *there.*  
 idem, eadem, idem, *the same, p. 121.*  
 idoneus, *fit for (dat.).*  
 ignārus, *ignorant (gen.).*  
 ignāvus, *lazy; sluggish.*  
 ign-is, is, *m. fire.*  
 ignoratio, *ignorance.*  
 ignoscere (nōvi), *to pardon.*  
 ill-e, a, ud, *he, she, it; that, p. 121.*  
 illustrare, *to illumine.*  
 imbecillus, *weak.*  
 immensus, *immense.*  
 immergere (mersi), *to plunge in.*  
 imminere, *to hang over; impend*  
 immobilis, *immoveable. [(dat.).*  
 immolare, *to sacrifice.*  
 immortalis, *immortal.*  
 impar, āris, *odd (said of numbers).*  
 impedire, *to hinder.*  
 impellere (pūli, pulsūm), *to impel.*  
 impendere (pendi, pensūm), *to spend.*  
 imperare, *to command (dat.), 191.*

\* Also 'to take' (one thing for another).

imperium, *command; power.*  
 impetrare, *to gain a request.*  
 impius, *impious.*  
 impletus, *filled (partic. of implere).*  
 impröbus, *wicked.*  
 in, *into (acc.); in (abl.), &c.*  
 incendium, *conflagration, fire.*  
 inceptum, *an undertaking.*  
 incertus, *uncertain.*  
 incidere, *to fall into; enter.*  
 in-cognitus, *unknown.*  
 in-cultus, *un-cultivated.*  
 indignus, *unworthy (abl.).*  
 indoctus, *unlearned.*  
 indulgere (dulsi, dultum), *to in-*  
*dulge (dat.), 191.*  
 industria, *industry.*  
 infelix, *icis, unfortunate.*  
 infestus, *hostile.*  
 infirmus, *very weak, superl.*  
*of infirmus.*  
 infra, *below.*  
 ingenium, *ability; mind.*  
 ingen-s, *tis, huge.*  
 inlibere, *to restrain.*  
 inhonestus, *dishonourable.*  
 iniquus, *unjust.*  
 injuria, *injury.*  
 innoxius, *harmless.*  
 inopia, *want, destitution.*  
 inspirare, *to breathe into.*  
 instituere, *to appoint; constitute.*  
 intë-ger, *gra, grum, whole.*  
 intelligere (lexi, lectum), *to under-*  
*stand.*  
 inter, *between; amongst.*  
 interdum, *sometimes.*  
 interesse, *to be engaged in.*  
 interfui (see inter-esse).  
 interrögare, *to ask.*  
 intervallum, *interval.*  
 intra, *within.*  
 intuëri, *to behold, see.*  
 inutilis, *useless; unfit for.*  
 invënire (vëni, ventum), *to find;*  
*invent.*  
 invidere (vidi, visum), *to envy (dat.).*  
 invitus, *unwilling. To be construed*  
*unwillingly.*  
 ips-e, a, um, G. *ius, self, myself,*  
*thysself, itself, &c.*  
 ira, *anger.*

irasci (iratus), *to be angry.*  
 irritare, *to irritate.*  
 is, ea, id, *he, she, it. See Pro-*  
*nouns, p. 121.*  
 Ist-er, *ri, the Danube.*  
 it-er, *inëris, journey, n.*  
 ita, *thus; so.*  
 jacere, jacio (jëci, jactum), *to*  
*throw, hurl.*  
 jaculari, *to hurl a dart, shoot.*  
 jam, *now, already.*  
 Janus, *Janus (a heathen god).*  
 jubere (jussi), *to bid, command.*  
 jucunditas, *pleasantness, pleasure.*  
 jucundus, *pleasant.*  
 jud-ex, *icis, judge.*  
 judicare, *to judge.*  
 Jupiter, G. *Jovis, &c., Jupiter,*  
*pp. 124, 125.*  
 jurare, *to swear.*  
 ju-s, *ris, justice, right.*  
 jussum, *a command.*  
 justus, *just.*  
 juvënis, *young man.*  
 juxta, *close by (prep.).*  
 Lacedæmonii, *the Lacedæmonians.*  
 laccess-ere (ivi, itum), *to provoke.*  
 lab-or, *öris, labour.*  
 labörare, *to labour; to be in trouble.*  
 lædere (læsi), *to hurt (acc.).*  
 lana, *wool.*  
 lat-us, *ëris, side, n.*  
 laudare, *to praise.*  
 lectio, *reading.* [nant.  
 legatus, *an ambassador; a lieute-*  
 lægere (lëgi, lectum), *to read.*  
 legio, *a legion.*  
 levis, *light.*  
 lex, *lëgis, law.*  
 lib-er, *ëra, erum, free.*  
 lib-er, *-ri, book.*  
 liberalita-s, *ätis, liberality.*  
 liberare, *to set free.*  
 licet, *it is allowed (used impers.*  
*with mihi, tibi, &c., for I*  
*may, you may, &c.).*  
 ligneus, *wooden.*  
 liquescere (licui), *to melt.*  
 litëra, *pl. a letter; literature.*  
 lit-us, *öris, shore, n.*

- locuples, *ētis*, *rich*.  
 locus (*pl. loci and loca*), *place*.  
 longus, *long*.  
 loqui (*locūtus sum*), *to speak*.  
 libido, *inis*, *lust*.  
 ludēre (*lūsi*), *to play*.  
 luna, *the moon*.  
 lup-us, *i*, *wolf*.  
 luscinia, *nightingale*.  
 lux, lucis, *light*.
- magist-er, *ri*, *master*.  
 magistrat-us, *ūs*, *magistrate*.  
 magni, *at a great (price)*.  
 magnitud-o, *inis*, *magnitude, size*.  
 magnōpēre, *earnestly*.  
 riagnus, *great*. With 'voice' *loud*.  
 man-us, *ūs*, *hand, f.* Also *band or body of soldiers*.  
 major, *greater*.  
 male, *badly*.  
 malitia, *wickedness*. [p. 121.  
 malo, malui, malle, *I had rather*,  
 malum (*neut.*), *evil; an evil*.  
 malus, *bad*.  
 mandare, *to enjoin*.  
 mar-e, *is, n.* *sea*.  
 marina (*aquā*), *salt (water) \**.  
 Massilia, *Marseilles*.  
 mat-er, *ris*, *mother*.  
 maxime, *adv. most, the most*.  
 maximi, *gen. at a very great price; very highly*.  
 maximus, *greatest*.  
 medēri, *to heal (dat.)*, 191.  
 mediocritas, *a middle point; the mean*.  
 medius, *middle (construed 'the middle or midst,' and 'of' put before its substantive, as medius rivus, the middle of the river)*.  
 mel, mellis (*n.*), *honey*.  
 memoria, *memory, recollection*.  
 mendacium, *a lie*.  
 men-s, *ntis, f.* *mind*.  
 metuēre, *to fear*.  
 met-us, *ūs*, *fear*.  
 me-us, *a, um*, *mine; my*. Voc.  
 mas., *mi*.
- migrare, *to remove (intrans.)*.  
 mil-es, *itis*, *a soldier*.  
 militiæ, *on service, in the field*.  
 mille, *a thousand*.  
 minari, *to threaten*.  
 minor, *less*.  
 mis-er, *era, crum*, *miserable*.  
 miserēri, *to pity (gen.)*.  
 miseret, 287.  
 miseria, *misery*.  
 mittēre (*misi, missum*), *to send*.  
 mōbilis, *moveable*.  
 modus, *manner, means*.  
 mōrēre, *to mourn*.  
 mollis, *soft*.  
 momordi. See *mordēre*.  
 monēre, *to advise*.  
 monocēr-os, *ōtis*, *a unicorn*.  
 mon-s, *tis, m.* *a mountain*.  
 monstrare, *to show*.  
 morari, *to delay*.  
 mordēre (*mōmordi, morsum*), *to bite*.  
 mores, *pl. character; morals*.  
 mori, *ior (mortuus sum)*, *to die*.  
 morōsus, *ill-humoured*.  
 mor-s, *tis*, *death*.  
 mortalis, *mortal*.  
 mortifer (*a, um*), *fatal*.  
 mortuus, *dead*. See *mori*.  
 movēre (*mōvi, mōtum*), *to move (trans.)*; *movēri, to move (intrans.)*.  
 mulctare, *to fine (abl.)*.  
 muli-er, *ēris*, *woman*.  
 multitud-o, *inis*, *multitude*.  
 multus, *many, much*.  
 mundus, *world*.  
 munire, *to fortify, to protect*.  
 mur-us, *i*, *wall*.  
 mutare, *to change*.  
 nasci, *natus sum, to be born*.  
 natare, *to swim*.  
 natūra, *nature*.  
 natus, *born*. Part. from *nascor*.  
 navigatio, *navigation*.  
 nav-is, *is*, *ship*.  
 ne—quidem (*with a word between*), *not even*.

\* Properly sea-water.

- nē, at the end of a word, is not to be translated\*, but the sentence is to be translated as a question.
- nē, with the subj. is to be translated by the imperative.
- nee, } neither, nor; and not.  
neque, }
- negare, to deny.
- negligēre (neglexi, neglectum), neglect, disregard.
- nem-o, īnis, nobody.
- nequire (nequco, like co), to be unable.
- ne-scire, not to know.
- nex, necis, death, murder.
- nidus, i, nest.
- nihil, nothing †; to be construed 'no,' when followed by gen., [56].
- nihīli, at nothing.
- nimis, too.
- nimius, too much.
- nisi, unless.
- nix, nīvis, snow.
- nobilis, noble; of rank.
- nobilitare, to ennoble, to make renowned.
- nocēre, to hurt (dat.), 191.
- non, not.
- nondum, not yet.
- nonnē, not, used in questions (is not? &c.). The auxiliary verb must be placed before the not.
- nonnulli, some.
- nost-er, ra, rum, our.
- nostri, gen. plur. of ego, I.
- novus, new.
- nubēre (nupsi, nuptum), to marry (dat.).
- nub-es, is, cloud.
- null-us, a, um, G. ius, none; no.
- num, not to be translated when it is the first word. If not the first word, to be translated whether.
- numerare, to number, count.
- numerus, number.
- nuntiare, to announce.
- nunquam, never.
- ob, on account of.
- ob oculos, before our eyes.
- obducēre (duxī, ductum), overlay; cover.
- obēdire, to obey (dat.), 191.
- ob-esse, to be prejudicial to (dat.).
- oblivisci (oblitus sum), to forget (gen.).
- obscure, obscurely.
- ob-sistere, to withstand, prevent (dat.).
- ob-stare (with dat.), to hinder.
- obtinēre, to obtain.
- ocasi-o, ōnis, opportunity.
- occidēre (cidi, cisum), to kill; slay.
- oceān-us, i, the ocean.
- ocūlus, i, eye.
- odium, hatred.
- odorat-us, ūs, smell, scent.
- offendere (di, sum), to offend (dat.).
- of-fēro (see irreg. verb fero, p. 123), to offer.
- officium, duty.
- olim, formerly.
- olorinus, adj. of the swan.
- omnis, all.
- operire, to cover.
- opes, G. um, resources; wealth.
- oportet, it behoves, 268.
- oppugnare, to attack.
- ops, opis, f. power, assistance.
- optimus, superl. of bonus, best.
- orare, to pray.
- orati-o, ōnis, speech.
- orat-or, ōris, orator.
- ostia, pl. mouth (of a river).
- ovis, sheep.
- pabulatum, to forage (supine).
- pallium, a cloak.
- palpēbrae, the eyelids.
- par, equal; even (opposed to odd).

\* Except in dependent questions: but where these occur, the necessary explanation is given. See 319, b.

† It is sometimes by 'not,' with at all.

- parare, to prepare; to provide.  
 parcere (peperci), to spare (dat.).  
 paren-s, tis, parent. [191].  
 parere, to obey (dat.), 191.  
 parere (pario), to bring forth.  
 par-s, tis, part.  
 parsimonia, frugality.  
 parvi (gen.), at a little.  
 parvum (neut. adj.), little.  
 parvus, little, small.  
 pastor, shepherd.  
 pate-feri (see fio, irreg. verb, p. 123), to be laid bare; to be discovered.  
 pat-er, ris, father.  
 pati, ior, passus sum, to suffer.  
 patientia, patience.  
 patria, country.  
 patrius, paternal, fatherly.  
 pauc-i, æ, a, few.  
 pauper, pauperis, poor.  
 paupert-as, atis, poverty.  
 pavimentum, pavement.  
 pavor, fear, dread.  
 pax, G. pæcis, peace.  
 peccare, to sin.  
 peccatum, a sin.  
 pecunia, money.  
 pec-us, oris, n. (any small tame animal), sheep.  
 penes, in the power of (prep.).  
 penna, feather.  
 peperci, see parcere.  
 per, through.  
 peregrinari, to go abroad: aves peregrinantes, migratory birds; birds of passage.  
 perficere, perficio, to accomplish.  
 perfidia, perfidy.  
 periculösus, dangerous.  
 periculum, danger.  
 perinde, just so; perinde est ac si, it is just as if.  
 peritus, skilful; skilled in (gen.).  
 Pers-æ, arum, the Persians.  
 per-solvère (solvi, solütum), to pay; per-solvere poenas, to suffer punishment\*.  
 persuadere (suasi), to persuade (dat.).
- permånere (mansi, mansum), to remain.  
 permötus, part. pass. of permö-vère, to move.  
 perniciosus, hurtful.  
 perpessus, partic. of perpëti, to suffer.  
 perpetuo, for ever.  
 perpetuus, perpetual; in perpetuum, for ever.  
 perturbatio, perturbation.  
 pervenire, to arrive.  
 petere (petivi, petitum), to seek; make for.  
 philosophia, philosophy.  
 piet-as, atis, dutiful affection.  
 piget, it vexes (used with acc. of pronoun), 287.  
 pingere (pinxi, pictum), to paint.  
 pisc-is, G. is, fish.  
 pius, pious.  
 placare, to appease.  
 placere (placui, placitum), to please (dat.), 191.  
 planta, plant.  
 Plat-o, önis, Plato (a Grecian philosopher).  
 plerique, pleræque, pleraque, most.  
 plerumque, generally.  
 plurimi, very many; most.  
 plus, G. pluris. Pl. -es, -a, G. -ium, &c., more.  
 pocul-um, i, a cup.  
 poena, punishment.  
 poenitet, it repents, 287 (used with acc. of pronoun).  
 poëta, poet.  
 pomum, apple.  
 ponere (posui, positum), to place.  
 pon-s, tis, m. bridge.  
 popularis, popular.  
 populus, i, people.  
 porta, gate.  
 positum, see ponere.  
 posui, see ponere.  
 posse, to be able; can, p. 123.  
 post, after (acc.).  
 post, adv. afterwards.  
 poten-s, tis, powerful.  
 potio, a drink, draught.

\* Properly to pay penalties.



potiri, *ior*, to get possession of.  
 potius, rather.  
 prae, in comparison of (prep.).  
 praeceptum, precept.  
 praeditus, endued with.  
 praesen-s, tis, present.  
 praestan-s, G. tis, excellent.  
 praestat, it is better.  
 praeter, besides, except; beyond.  
 praeteritus, past.  
 pratum, meadow.  
 premere (pressi), to press.  
 pretiosus, valuable.  
 primus, first.  
 principat-us, ūs, the first place.  
 privare, to deprive.  
 privatus, private.  
 pro, for; suitable to.  
 prodesse (profui), to profit; to do good to (dat.).  
 proditi-o, ōnis, treachery.  
 praelium, battle.  
 profectus, part. of proficisci, to set out.  
 profui, see prodesse.  
 prohibere, to prevent, hinder.  
 proles, is, offspring, young.  
 prope, near.  
 propensus, inclined.  
 propior, nearer.  
 propter, on account of.  
 protinus, forthwith, immediately.  
 providentia, providence.  
 providus, circumspect, wise.  
 prudentia, prudence; practical wisdom.  
 pud-or, ōris, shame, bashfulness.  
 puella, girl.  
 puer, G. puēri, boy.  
 pugna, battle.  
 pugnare, to fight.  
 pullus, young (of a bird).  
 pulv-is, ēris, dust.  
 putare, to think.  
 qua-dam, abl. fem. of qui-dam.  
 quadraginta, forty.  
 quaerere, quaesivi, to seek, enquire.  
 questio, question.  
 qualis, of what kind?

quam, than, as. Before adj. how.  
 quam plurimi, as many as possible.  
 quam maximus, as great as possible, when. [sible].  
 quantum, how much.  
 quantus, how great.  
 quare, why?  
 quartus, fourth.  
 quē, and.  
 quere-us, ūs, oak.  
 qui, quae, quod, who; which; that.  
 quia, because.  
 quicquid (neut. of quis-quis), whatever.  
 quid (neut. of quis), why?  
 quidam\*, a certain; some.  
 quidem, indeed; nē quidem, not even.  
 quiescere (quievi), to rest, keep quiet.  
 quis, who? quid, what?  
 quis (indefinite), any.  
 quisquam, any body.  
 quisque, quaeque, quidque, each; every body.  
 quo, that (putting 'the' before the comparative; quo melius, the better): whither.  
 quod, neut. of qui.  
 quod, adv. because.  
 quotidie, daily; every day.  
 quum, when; if followed by tum, both, tum being and.  
 raro, seldom.  
 ratio, onis, reason, an account.  
 recordari, to remember (gen.).  
 recipere, io, to receive.  
 recte, rightly; well.  
 rectus, right.  
 recusare, to refuse.  
 reddere (reddidi, redditum), to return: reddere rationem, to give an account.  
 redire (red-eo), to return: eo, p. 124.  
 re-ferre, fero (p. 123): referre gratiam, to show kindness in return.

\* Declined like qui with dam added.

- re-ficere, io (to make again), to refresh.
- refugere, io (fugi, fugitum), to flee back.
- regere (rexi, rectum), to rule.
- regina, a queen.
- regi-o, ōnis, f. a district, country.
- regnare, to reign.
- regnum, kingdom.
- reliquis, remaining; the other.
- reminisci, to recollect (gen. or [acc.]).
- repente, suddenly.
- reperire, to find.
- reprehendere, di, sum, to blame.
- r-es, ei, thing, affair.
- resistere (restiti), to resist (dat.).
- respondere (responsum), to answer (dat.).
- res-publica\*, commonwealth.
- retinere, to retain.
- retul-; see referre.
- reus, an accused person.
- revertere, si, sum, to return.
- revocare, to recall.
- rex, regis, king.
- Rhenus, the Rhine.
- Rhodanus, the Rhone.
- ridere (risi), to laugh; to laugh at.
- rigere, to be stiff; to be dried up.
- ris-us, ūs, laughler.
- rob-ur, ōris, strength.
- robustus, strong.
- rogare, to ask.
- Roma, Rome.
- Romanus, Roman.
- rotundus, round.
- rugire, to roar.
- rure, from the country.
- ruri, in the country.
- rūs (as an acc. after a verb of motion), into the country.
- sacerd-os, ōtis, a priest.
- sape, often.
- sagitta, an arrow.
- salsus, salt.
- saltare, to dance.
- saluber, wholesome; salubrious.
- sanare, to heal; to cure.
- sangu-is, inis, blood.
- sapere, io, to be wise.
- sapient-s, tis, wise.
- sapientia, wisdom.
- sapientissime, most wisely.
- Sard-es, G. ium (used only in plur.), Sardes.
- satiare, to satisfy (with food, &c.).
- satis, enough.
- Saturn-us, i, Saturn; a heathen god.
- saxum, rock, stone.
- secelestus, wicked.
- scaptrum, sceptre.
- scientia, knowledge.
- Scipi-o, ōnis, Scipio, a Roman general.
- scire, to know.
- scribere (scripsi, scriptum), to write.
- scriptum, a writing.
- secundum, along; according to.
- secutus, see sequi.
- se, acc. of sui, 116.
- sed, but.
- scdere, to su.
- seg-es, etis, a crop.
- sem-en, G. inis, seed, n.
- semper, always.
- sempitern-us, a, um, eternal.
- senect-us, ūtis, old age.
- sen-ex, is, an old man. G. pl. um.
- sentire (scnsi), to feel; perceive.
- sepelire, to bury.
- sequi (secutus sum), to follow.
- serere (sevi, satum), to sow; plant.
- serpen-s, tis, a serpent; snake.
- serus, late.
- servare, to keep; observe.
- servire, to be a slave to; to serve (dat.).
- serv-us, i, slave.
- sese, the acc. of sui, doubled (see 116).
- severitas, strictness.
- si, if.
- sic, so.
- similis, like (dat.).
- simpl-ex, icis, simple.
- simulare, to pretend.

\* This word is really an adjective in agreement with *res*; and is so declined. Gen. *rei-publica*. Acc. *rem-publicam*.

simulati-o, ōnis, *an assumed appearance.*  
 sine, *without.*  
 sitire, *to be thirsty.*  
 sive, or, *whether* (299).  
 sol, solis, *the sun.*  
 solum, *only.*  
 sol-us, a, um (G. ius), *only, alone.*  
 somnus, *sleep.*  
 son-us, i, *a sound.*  
 spargere (sparsi), *to scatter.*  
 spectare, *to behold.*  
 sperare, *to hope for.*  
 spoliare, *to rob* (of), *despoil*, abl.  
 stabilit-as, ātis, *stability.*  
 stare (stēti, statum), *to stand; to cost.*  
 statim, *immediately.*  
 stella, *star.*  
 studere, *to devote oneself to; aim at* (dat.).  
 studioso, *attentively.*  
 studiōsus, *very fond.*  
 studium, *eager pursuit; exertion.*  
 stultitia, *folly.* [study].  
 stultus, *foolish.*  
 sub, *under.*  
 subire (sub-co), p. 124, *to undergo.*  
 subvenire (veni, ventum), } *to suc-*  
 succurrere (curri, cur- } *curr-*  
 sum), } (dat.).  
 sudare, *to be in a perspiration.*  
 sumere (sumpsi, sumptum), *to take.*  
 summus, *highest, greatest.* Often to be construed by 'top,' its subst. following in the gen.; as, summus mons, *the top of the mountain.*  
 sumpt-us, ūs, *expense.*  
 super, *above* (276).  
 superare, *to surpass; conquer.*  
 supervacuus, *unnecessary; superfluous.*  
 suppeditare, *to supply.*  
 supra, *above.*  
 surdus, *deaf.*  
 suscipere (cepi, ceptum), *to undertake.*  
 sustinere, *to endure.*  
 su-us, a, um, *his, hers (her), its; their* (or *his, &c., own*).

Syracusæ, arum (used only in plur.), *Syracuse.*  
 tacere, *to be silent; hold one's tongue.*  
 tam, *so.*  
 tamen, *yet, nevertheless.*  
 tantum, *only.*  
 tantus, *so great.*  
 tardus, *slow.*  
 taurus, *a bull.*  
 tegere (texi, tectum), *to cover.*  
 temere, *inconsiderately.*  
 templum, *a temple.*  
 temp-us, ōris, *time.*  
 tenere (tenui), *to hold, restrain.*  
 tentare, *to try.*  
 terra, *earth.*  
 terrēnus, *belonging to the earth; earthly.*  
 terrere (terrui, territum), *to frighten.*  
 tenuis, *as far as; up to* (gen.).  
 Theb-æ, arum (used only in plur.), *Thebes.*  
 timere, *to fear.*  
 timidus, *timid.*  
 Timole-on, ontis, *Timoleon, a man's name.*  
 tondeo (totondi, tonsum), *to shear.*  
 torqu-is, is, *a chain* (worn round the neck).  
 tot-us, a, um, G. ius, *whole.*  
 trans, *across.*  
 trans-ire, *to pass over* (eo, p. 124).  
 trans-mittere, *to cross.*  
 tres, tria, G. ium, *three.*  
 triangulus, *a triangle.*  
 triennium, *a space of three years.*  
 tristis, *sad.*  
 Troja, *Troy* (a town in Asia Minor).  
 truncus, *a trunk.*  
 tuli, &c. (see fero, p. 123.)  
 tum, then: tum—quum, *both—and.*  
 turp-is, n. turpe, *disgraceful.*  
 tutus, *safe.*  
 tuus, *thy, your.*  
 tyrannus, *a tyrant.*  
 ubi, *where?*  
 ull-us (a, um; G. ius), *any.*

- ultra, *beyond*.  
 ultro, *voluntarily*.  
 unde, *whence*.  
 unquam, *ever*.  
 un-us (a, um; G. ius), *one*.  
 urbs, G. urbis, *city*.  
 urĕre (ussi, ustum), *to burn*.  
 urs-us, i, *bear*.  
 usitatus, *customary; familiar*.  
 us-us, ūs, *use, advantage*.  
 ut, *that*.  
 ut-cr, ra, rum (G. utrius), *which*  
     *(of two)*.  
 uti (usus sum), *to use (abl.)*.  
 utilis, *useful; good for*.  
 utilitas, *usefulness, use*.  
 usque, *quite up to; to*.  
 uva, *grape*.
- vacare, *to have leisure (dat.)*.  
 valen-s, tis, *strong*.  
 vapor, *vapour*.  
 variare, *to change*.  
 vehementer, *vehemently, very*  
     *much*.  
 velit (see volo, p. 123).  
 velo-x, ōcis, *swift*.  
 venaticus, *belonging to hunting;*  
     *canis venaticus, a sporting*  
     *dog; a hound*.  
 venatum (supine), *a hunting*.  
 vendĕre (vendĭdi, vendĭtum), *to*  
     *sell*.  
 vēnire (vēni, ventum), *to come*.  
 Venus, Venĕris, *Venus (a heathen*  
     *goddess)*.  
 vere, *truly*.  
 verĕri, *to fear (veritus sum)*.  
 verum, *but*.  
 verus, *true*.  
 vesci, *to feed upon (abl.)*.
- vespa, *a wasp*.  
 vesper (vespĕris), *the evening*.  
 vest-is, is, f. *a garment*.  
 via, *way; road*.  
 vici, *see vincere*.  
 vietus, *see vivere or vincere*.  
 victĭma, *a victim*.  
 vict-or, ōris, *a conqueror*.  
 victoria, *victory*.  
 vict-us, ūs, *food*.  
 vĭdĕre (vĭdi, vĭsum), *to see: vi-*  
     *dĕri, to be seen; (or more*  
     *commonly) to seem*.  
 vincĕre (vĭci, vietum), *to conquer*.  
 vineŭlum, *a chain*.  
 vindicare, *to avenge*.  
 vinum, *wine*.  
 violare, *to offend-against; wrong;*  
     *break (a law)*.  
 vir, vĭri, *a man*.  
 vĭres, G. ium, *strength*.  
 virt-us, ūtis, *virtue, valour*.  
 vis, *force, power (acc. vim; abl.*  
     *vi: plur. vĭres, virium, &c.)*.  
 vis, 2nd sing. of volo, irreg. verb.  
 vita, *life*.  
 vitare, *to avoid*.  
 vitium, *vice*.  
 vitreus, adj. *made of glass*.  
 vituperare, *to censure; find fault*  
     *with*.  
 vivĕre (vixi, vietum), *to live*.  
 vix, *scarcely*.  
 vixi, *see vivere*.  
 vocare, *to call, to invite*.  
 volo (p. 123), *am willing; wish*.  
 volunt-as, ātis, *will*.  
 volupt-as, ātis, *pleasure*.  
 vox, G. vŏcis, *a voice*.  
 vuln-us, ĕris, *wound*.  
 vulp-es, is, *a fox*.

THE END.

ing.

ere.

see : vi-  
(or more

conquer.

; wrong;

ur.  
vim; abl.  
um, &c.).  
eg. verb.

ss.  
find fault

live.

; wish.

